

# **VERTU Constellation Quest**

## **Reference Manual**



# Contents

<b>Preface</b>	<b>5</b>
Conventions used in this guide	5
<b>Health and safety</b>	<b>6</b>
General	6
Operating environment	6
Electronic devices	6
Battery safety	7
Wall charger safety	7
<b>Taking care of your phone</b>	<b>8</b>
General	8
Battery	8
Ceramics and sapphire	8
Leather	8
Metal	9
<b>Introducing your Vertu phone</b>	<b>10</b>
Access codes	10
Getting help and support	11
<b>Getting started</b>	<b>12</b>
Vertu package contents	12
Vertu phone layout - front	12
Setting up your phone	14
Home key	18
My Key	18
Dedicated keys	19
Select keys	19
QWERTY keyboard	19
Status bar icons	20
Lower status bar icons	20
Commands and audible indicators	21
<b>Setting up your phone</b>	<b>22</b>
Setting up your phone for the first time	22
Vertu Startup Wizard	22
Switch	23
<b>Home screen and clock</b>	<b>24</b>
Home screen	24
Information area	24
Dynamic Information area	27
Notification zone	27
Media feeds	27

Menu	29
Task viewer	30
Control panel	30
Setting up your personal and business preferences	31
<b>Security</b>	<b>32</b>
Security Settings	32
Phone and SIM card security	32
Other security measures: restricting calls	34
Certificate manager	34
Protected Content: Digital Rights Management (DRM)	35
View and edit security modules	36
Browser security	36
<b>Call functions and Call Log</b>	<b>37</b>
Making a call	37
Speed dialing	38
Answering a call	39
In-call options	40
Voice mail	41
Multiparty calls	41
Call barring	42
Call settings	42
Call forwarding	43
Network	44
Licenses	45
Call Log	46
Making a video call	47
Video sharing	48
Video sharing settings	48
Share live video or video clips	48
Accept an invitation	49
<b>Contacts</b>	<b>50</b>
About Contacts	50
Working with contacts	50
Creating a new contact	50
Send Contact information	50
Editing a contact	51
Deleting a contact	52
Contact groups	52
Copy and Duplicate (Manage) Contacts	53
Contacts memory	54



Service numbers .....	54
Contacts settings .....	55
<b>Messages- - - - -</b>	<b>56</b>
Message alerts .....	56
Messaging folders .....	57
Organize messages .....	57
Text messages .....	57
Multimedia messages .....	58
Emails .....	59
Speech messages and Message Reader .....	60
Presentations .....	60
Service messages .....	60
Cell broadcast .....	61
Messaging settings .....	61
<b>Email - - - - -</b>	<b>64</b>
Setting up your email accounts .....	64
Email settings .....	68
<b>Vertu Services - - - - -</b>	<b>71</b>
Vertu Concierge .....	71
Vertu Technical Support .....	71
Vertu Remote Assist .....	71
Vertu Select .....	72
City Brief .....	72
Vertu Downloads .....	72
Registration .....	72
<b>Calendar - - - - -</b>	<b>73</b>
Calendar entries .....	73
Calendar settings .....	77
<b>Camera - - - - -</b>	<b>79</b>
Camera setup .....	81
Working with captured images and videos .....	82
<b>Connectivity- - - - -</b>	<b>84</b>
Data connections and access points .....	84
Network settings .....	84
Wireless LAN .....	85
Active data connections .....	86
Sync .....	86
Bluetooth connectivity .....	87
Remote SIM mode .....	89

PC connections .....	89
Ovi Suite .....	90
Net Settings .....	90
<b>Working with the Internet - - - - -</b>	<b>91</b>
Internet .....	91
Network destinations .....	91
Media feeds .....	93
Web settings .....	95
<b>Office Tools- - - - -</b>	<b>96</b>
Active Notes .....	96
Calculator .....	96
File manager .....	97
Quickoffice .....	97
Converter .....	97
Zip Manager .....	98
PDF Reader .....	98
Dictionary .....	98
Notes .....	99
Intranet .....	99
<b>Gallery- - - - -</b>	<b>100</b>
Gallery main view .....	100
Sound clips .....	100
Streaming links .....	100
Presentations .....	100
Songs .....	101
Images .....	101
Video clips .....	101
View images and videos .....	101
Active toolbar .....	102
Albums .....	103
Tags .....	103
Slide show .....	103
Edit images .....	104
Edit videos .....	104
Print images .....	104
<b>Home Network - - - - -</b>	<b>106</b>
View and share media files .....	107
Copy media files .....	108
Home synchronization .....	108



# Contents

<b>Media</b>	<b>109</b>
Radio	109
Music Player	111
Ovi music	112
Recorder	112
Share online	112
RealPlayer	114
Video center	115
<b>Maps</b>	<b>116</b>
Welcome to Maps	116
My position	116
Change the look of the map	117
Download and update maps	117
Using the compass	117
About positioning methods	118
Find places	118
Favorites	119
Synchronize your Favorites	119
Share location	120
Drive and Walk	120
Get traffic and safety information	121
Maps shortcuts	123
Map Settings	123
<b>Positioning</b>	<b>125</b>
Positioning (GPS)	125
<b>Application Manager</b>	<b>129</b>
Application Manager	129
Remove applications and software	130
<b>Personal Settings</b>	<b>131</b>
Profiles	131
Personalize the home screen	132
Change the display theme	132
Audio themes	133
Desk stand	133
<b>Accessories</b>	<b>134</b>
Battery	134
Wall charger	134
Data cable	135
SD card	135

AV cable	135
Vertu Wired Headset	136
Common accessory settings	136
<b>Maintenance</b>	<b>137</b>
Update software	138
<b>Printing</b>	<b>139</b>
Printing	139
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	<b>141</b>
<b>Specifications</b>	<b>143</b>
<b>Shortcuts</b>	<b>144</b>
Shortcuts	144
<b>Warranty and legal information</b>	<b>146</b>
Manufacturer's limited warranty	146
SAR Notice – RM-582V	148
FCC/Industry Canada notice	148
Declaration of conformity	149
Export controls	149
Notices	149
Licenses	149
EU recycling notice	150
Passive Near Field Communication Device	150
<b>Glossary</b>	<b>151</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>153</b>





This wireless device is approved for use on EGSM 900 MHz, GSM 850/1800/1900 MHz, and WCDMA Bands I, II, V, and VI. Contact your service provider for more information about networks.

To use a device, you must have service from a wireless service provider. Some features are not available on all networks; other features may require that you make specific arrangements with your service provider to use them. Network services involve transmission of data. Check with your service provider for details about fees in your home network and when roaming on other networks. Your service provider can explain what charges will apply.

Your service provider may have requested that certain features be disabled or not activated in your device. If so, these features will not appear on your device menu. Your device may also have customized items, such as menu names, menu order, and icons.

To use any features in this device other than the alarm clock, the device must be switched on.

When using the features in this device, obey all laws and respect all local customs, privacy, and the legitimate rights of others, including copyrights.

Copyright protection may prevent some images, music, and other content from being copied, modified, or transferred.

Content owners may use different types of digital rights management (DRM) technologies to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses various types of DRM software to access DRM-protected content. With this device, you can access content protected with WMDRM 10 and OMA DRM 2.0. If certain DRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask that its access to new DRM-protected content be revoked. Revocation may also prevent renewal of the relevant DRM-protected content already in your device. Revocation of DRM software does not affect the use of content protected by other types of DRM or the use of non-DRM-protected content.

Remember to make backup copies or keep a written record of all important information stored in your device.

## Conventions used in this guide



**WARNING:** Indicates important information relating to safety.



**IMPORTANT:** Indicates important information not relating to safety.



**NOTE:** Indicates a point to be aware of when using your Vertu phone.



**TIP:** Represents useful information, such as a quick way to access a feature.

### Menu

Represents text that appears on your Vertu phone's display, for example, "From the Home screen, select **Menu**."

Copyright © Vertu 2010. All rights reserved.

Reproduction, transfer, distribution, or storage of part or all of the contents in this document in any form without the prior written permission of Vertu is prohibited. Vertu operates a policy of continuous development. Vertu reserves the right to make changes and improvements to any of the products described in this document without prior notice.

Under no circumstances shall Vertu be responsible for any loss of data or income or any special, incidental, consequential, or indirect damages howsoever caused.

The contents of this document are provided as is. Except as required by applicable law, no warranties of any kind, either expressed or implied, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose, are made with respect to the accuracy, reliability, or contents of this document. Vertu reserves the right to revise this document or withdraw it at any time without prior notice. The availability of particular products may vary by region. Please check with Vertu Concierge.

Vertu and the V logo are trademarks or registered trademarks. Other product and company names mentioned herein may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

# Health and safety



**WARNING:** Read the following simple guidelines. Not following them may be dangerous or illegal.

## General

- Do not attempt to dismantle the phone or any of its accessories. Only qualified service personnel should repair your Vertu phone and its accessories.
- Do not touch the phone, battery, or wall charger with wet hands.
- Keep your Vertu phone and all parts and accessories out of the reach of small children and pets. The SIM card and other small parts cause a choking hazard.
- Use only batteries and accessories approved by Vertu for use with this particular model. The use of any other types may invalidate any approval or warranty, and may be dangerous. In particular, use of unapproved chargers or batteries may pose a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard. For availability of approved accessories, please check with your dealer.
- The bundled battery and wall charger are only for use with your Vertu phone. Do not use this battery or charger with any other device.
- Before connecting your Vertu phone to another device, read the supporting documentation to confirm that the other device is compatible.

## Operating environment

- Observe all local safety regulations regarding the use of cell phones while driving.
- Pull off the road and park before making or answering a call.
- Do not stop on the shoulder of a freeway to answer or make a call, except in an emergency.
- If using an integrated handsfree device, make sure the phone is securely placed in its holder.
- Do not place the phone on the passenger seat or where it can break loose during a collision or sudden stop.
- Only qualified personnel should install the device in a vehicle. Faulty installation or service may be dangerous. For more information, consult your vehicle manufacturer or representative.
- Vehicle air bags inflate with great force. Do not place objects, including either installed or portable wireless equipment, in the area over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area.
- Switch off your Vertu phone when refueling.
- Do not handle your Vertu phone when operating machinery.
- Switch your Vertu phone off if you are entering a hospital or health-care facility. Medical equipment may be affected by phone use.

- Switch your Vertu phone off when travelling on an aircraft. The phone signal may interfere with systems in the aircraft. You are legally bound to comply with this recommendation.
- Switch your Vertu phone off in any facility where posted notices prohibit phone use. Always follow building regulations governing phone use.
- Switch your Vertu phone off when blasting is in progress, and observe all provided guidelines and regulations.
- Switch your Vertu phone off in areas with potentially explosive atmospheres, such as fuel storage areas and spray paint facilities.
- Keep your Vertu phone away from fuel and chemicals.

## Electronic devices

- If you wear a pacemaker, or are in the company of someone who does, you should be aware that there is a small risk of cell phone use interfering with the operation of the pacemaker. You should contact your doctor or the manufacturer of the pacemaker for more information. If you have any reason to suspect that interference is taking place, switch off your phone immediately.
- Persons with pacemakers should keep the phone more than 6 inches (15 cm) from the pacemaker when the phone is on.
- Persons with pacemakers should not carry the phone in a breast pocket.
- Persons with pacemakers should use the ear opposite the pacemaker to minimize the risk of interference.
- Mobile phone use may interfere with some hearing aids. If this happens, you should contact your service provider or doctor for further information.
- Mobile phone use may interfere with the functionality of inadequately shielded medical devices. Consult a physician or the device manufacturer to ensure safe procedures are used.
- Mobile phone use may interfere with the functionality of any inadequately shielded electronic system in a motor vehicle. Examples include air bags and fuel injection systems. You should contact the manufacturer of the vehicle or system to ensure that the system is properly shielded.
- Note that excessive sound pressure from earphones and headphones can cause hearing loss. Consequently before you use any device with earphones and headphones you should make sure that the volume levels are adjusted to a comfortable level.



### Battery safety

- Stop using the battery if you detect any abnormalities, such as odor, discoloration, or heat during use, charging, or storage.
- Do not use your Vertu phone with a damaged battery.
- Do not short-circuit the battery. Accidental short-circuiting can occur when a metallic object causes a direct connection between the + and - terminals of the battery.
- Do not touch the battery terminals.
- Do not leave the battery in areas of extreme cold or heat.
- Do not store your Vertu phone in, or near, direct heat sources such as radiators. This could cause the battery to overheat and explode.
- Never soak the battery in water or any other liquid.
- Never attempt to open the battery. The battery contains substances that may be harmful if swallowed or allowed to come into contact with unprotected skin.
- In the unlikely event of a battery leak, be careful to keep the battery fluid away from your eyes and skin. If the fluid does come into contact with eyes or skin, flush thoroughly with clean water and consult a doctor.
- Do not dispose of the battery in a fire.
- Do not dispose of the battery in a regular waste container. The battery contains toxic chemicals and must be disposed of appropriately. Contact your local authorities for more information.

### Wall charger safety

- Do not use a damaged or worn charger. The use of a damaged or worn charger could result in electric shock, burns, or fire.
- Do not bend or twist the cable of the charger.
- Do not pull on the connected data cable to remove the charger plug from a socket. Grasp the plug directly when unplugging the charger to avoid damaging the cable.
- Do not touch the pins of the plug when connecting or disconnecting it from a power source.
- Never charge your Vertu phone when the connection point is damp or wet.
- Chargers must only be used in dry conditions. They should never be used when damp or wet.
- Do not place heavy objects on the charger.
- When the charger is not in use, disconnect it from the power source.



# Taking care of your phone

Your Vertu products have been crafted from some of the finest materials, and care should be taken to keep them in good condition. Damage caused to your Vertu phone by failing to observe these care instructions is not covered by the warranty.

## General

- Always use your Vertu phone in the intended manner. Incorrect use may affect performance.
- To avoid permanent damage to your Vertu phone, use only Vertu-approved batteries and accessories.
- The bundled battery and wall charger are only for use with your Vertu phone. Do not use this battery or charger with any other device. This could cause permanent damage to the device, battery, or charger.
- Use only batteries and accessories approved by Vertu for use with this particular model.
- Before connecting your Vertu phone to another device, read the supporting documentation to confirm that the other device is compatible.
- Keep your Vertu phone and all parts and accessories out of the reach of small children and pets.
- Do not allow your Vertu phone, battery, or accessories to come into contact with liquids or moisture. If your Vertu handset accidentally gets wet, dry it completely with a soft, absorbent cloth before removing the back cover. Remove the battery and leave all parts to dry naturally. Do not apply heat.
- Do not use or store your Vertu phone in dusty or dirty locations.
- Do not use or store your Vertu phone in hot or cold areas.
- Do not open your Vertu phone unless absolutely necessary. Before replacing the back cover, ensure that the interior of the phone and the back cover seals are dry, clean, and free of any foreign objects.
- Do not mishandle or abuse your Vertu phone.
- Do not apply paint or similar substances to your Vertu phone.
- Interference may affect the performance of your Vertu phone. This is normal and the phone should operate normally once you move away from the source of the interference.
- If your Vertu phone or any of the accessories are not working as they should, please consult your dealer. They can provide you with the expert assistance you require.
- Do not attempt to disassemble your Vertu phone. Only Vertu-authorized personnel should service the phone.

- Only use a soft, clean cloth to clean your Vertu phone. Do not use chemicals, detergents, abrasive substances, or any liquids. Use a cotton swab to clean the camera lens.

## Battery

- Do not leave the battery connected to the charger and power source for longer than necessary. This will result in repeated short charging, which will reduce battery performance and life span. Disconnect the charger when the battery is full.
- Do not leave the battery in areas of extreme cold or heat. This could affect the performance and lifetime of the battery. A device with a hot or cold battery may not work temporarily. The battery's optimum performance is in an ambient temperature between +59°F (+15°C) and +77°F (+25°C).
- Only remove the battery with the phone switched off.

## Ceramics and sapphire

Ceramics and sapphire are very hard materials, but are also brittle and can be scratched by harder materials or objects. They can also be damaged if dropped.

- Avoid contact between your Vertu phone and hard materials, such as diamond jewelry, nail files, abrasives, and mineral crystals.
- Do not drop or knock your Vertu phone on hard surfaces.
- Avoid repeated rubbing of your Vertu phone against hard surfaces.

## Leather

All Vertu leather products are made by expert craftsmen. Each leather hide is unique and has natural markings that should be considered part of the individuality of fine leather. All leather can be damaged and should be treated with care.

- Avoid exposing your Vertu phone to water and high humidity.
- Avoid dropping, knocking, or rubbing your Vertu phone against hard surfaces.
- Do not expose your Vertu phone to extreme temperatures.
- Avoid contact between your Vertu phone and oily substances, makeup, or solvents.



### Metal

Vertu metals are finished to a high standard and care needs to be taken to maintain their appearance.

- Avoid contact between your Vertu phone and chemicals such as solvents, alkaline and acid solutions, cola-based drinks, and salt water. If contact occurs, wipe with a clean, soft cloth as soon as possible.
- Avoid contact between your Vertu phone and sharp objects.
- Avoid dropping or knocking your Vertu phone on hard surfaces.
- Do not use metal polishes on your Vertu phone.

### Hallmarks

If you own a gold Vertu phone, the hallmarks are stamped on your phone to authenticate the precious metal used. Precious metal is tested to ensure that the purity of the alloy conforms to the exacting standards of the European Convention mark used under the jurisdiction of the Swiss Assay Office.

The hallmark is made up of several stamps, each of which have an individual meaning. The stamp is located adjacent to the Vertu logo on the back cover of your phone.

The assay stamp is made up of five marks as follows:

- Serial number.
- Vertu brand mark.
- Common control mark denoting the European Convention mark - 750 (18 carat gold) in scales.
- Fineness (purity) mark - AU750, (18 carat gold).
- St. Bernard dog's head - the Swiss Assay mark.

# Introducing your Vertu phone



Your new Vertu phone is a feature-rich smartphone with a QWERTY keyboard plus a high-resolution, VGA, 640 x 480 pixel screen. The phone includes a desktop-like email client, a highly functional Web browser, and the ability to multitask. Such flexibility makes it an ideal business tool as well as a phone that is highly capable for managing your personal activities.

- The feature-rich clock automatically displays your local time and, when you travel, both your local time at home and the time in your current time zone.
- The network time function automatically maintains accurate time.
- The analog clock displays appointments and alarms, helping you with time management at a glance.

- A Notification area displays information about recent messages, emails, and missed calls.
- Quick access to the Vertu City Brief feature allows you to quickly find information about your home or other city.
- The Concierge button gives you access to the Concierge service and technical support. Both services are available by voice or email. Use Concierge services for all your lifestyle needs, and contact Technical Support for any technical issues concerning your phone.
- News feeds and Vertu Select feeds are displayed on the home screen, keeping you up to date with the latest news and developments.
- Assisted GPS (A-GPS) along with global maps and navigation software makes it easy for you to find your way to unfamiliar locations.
- This Vertu phone includes a 5-megapixel camera with autofocus, a media player, and FM radio.
- 40-GB (8+32) memory is available to store your personal data, including photos and music.

## Access codes

For further assistance with access codes and security, refer to “Security Settings” on page 32 or contact Vertu Technical Support for help.

- **Personal identification number (PIN) code** — This code protects your SIM card against unauthorized use. The PIN code (4–8 digits) is usually supplied with the SIM card. After three consecutive incorrect PIN code entries, the code is blocked and you need the PUK code to unblock it.
- **UPIN code** — This code may be supplied with the USIM card. The USIM card is an enhanced version of the SIM card and is supported by 3G mobile phones.
- **PIN2 code** — This code (4–8 digits) is supplied with some SIM cards and is required to access some functions in your device.
- **Lock code** (also known as security code) — The lock code helps you protect your device against unauthorized use. The preset code is 12345. You can create and change the code and set the device to request the code. Keep the new code secret and in a safe place separate from your device. If you forget the code and your device is locked, you should contact Technical Support. Additional charges may apply, and all the personal data in your device may be deleted. For more information, contact Vertu.





- Personal unblocking key (PUK) code and PUK2 code — These codes (8 digits) are required to change a blocked PIN code or PIN2 code, respectively. If the codes are not supplied with the SIM card, contact the network service provider whose SIM card is in your device.
- UPUK code — This code (8 digits) is required to change a blocked UPIN code. If the code is not supplied with the USIM card, contact the network service provider whose USIM card is in your device.

## IMEI number

International mobile equipment identity (IMEI) number — This number (15 or 17 digits) is used to identify valid devices on the GSM network. Phones that are stolen or lost can be blocked from accessing the network. The IMEI number for your phone is found in the battery compartment under the battery.

The serial number for your phone is stamped on the battery cover.

## Getting help and support

To find out more about using your phone, or if you are unsure how your phone should function, there are a number of ways you can get help.

- Contact Technical Support. You can call or email Vertu Technical Support using the Concierge key.
- Contact Vertu Concierge, there to assist you with any issue. Concierge offers personal and sophisticated Help facilities by phone as well as email.
- Use the **In-device Help** or this user guide.
- Setup wizards available on the phone in **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Sett. wizard** help you with registration and email installations.

If you cannot resolve an issue, do one of the following:

- Restart the device: switch off the device and remove the battery. After about a minute, replace the battery, and switch on the phone.
- Restore the original factory settings.
- Update your device software. (See “Update software” on page 138.)

If your issue remains unresolved, contact Vertu Concierge or your Vertu dealer. Before returning your device back for any reason, always back up your data.

## In-device Help

Your Vertu phone contains an internal Help system to assist you with using the phone.

1. Most functions have contextual Help available in **Options > Help**. This provides the quickest way to get immediate assistance.
2. You can also access the complete Help function by selecting **Menu > Help > Help**. This Help contains a search function, which is accessed using **Options > Search**.
3. To change the size of the Help text, select **Options > Increase font size** or **Decrease font size**.
4. You may find links to related topics at the end of the Help text. If you select an underlined word, a short explanation is displayed. Help texts use the following indicators:

➔ Link to a related Help topic.

☐ Link to the application being discussed.

To switch between Help texts and an application open in the background, select **Options > Show open apps**. and the desired application appears.

## SD Card

A removable SD card is normally pre-installed in your Vertu phone. It contains the Reference Manual in PDF format in supported languages as well as additional software.

# Getting started

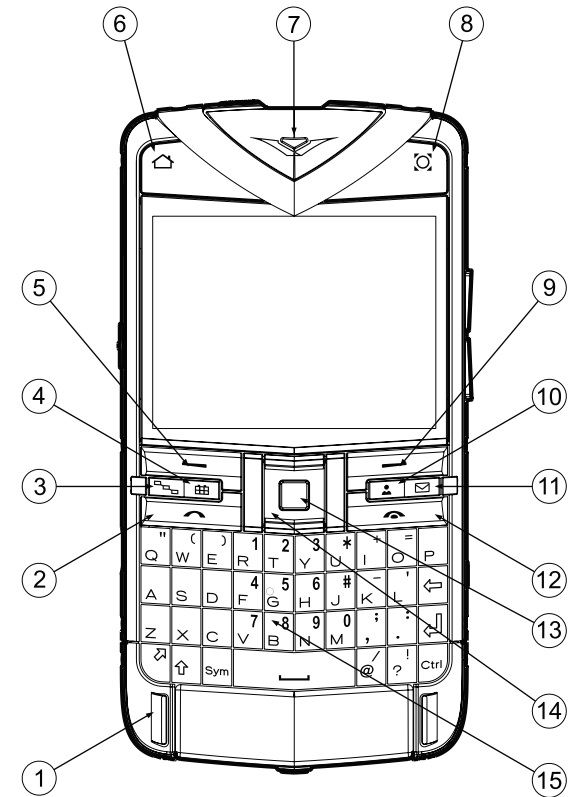


## Vertu package contents

- 1 Vertu Constellation Quest phone RM-582V
- 2 Battery: BP-4LV (Li-ion)
- 1 Micro USB wall charger (multi-region) - AC31
- 1 V Collection wired stereo headset
- 1 AV cable – CA-163V
- 1 Polishing cloth
- 2 Micro USB – USB data cables (one each for data connection and charger) – CA101-V
- 1 32-GB memory card

The package contents may vary slightly according to regional regulations.

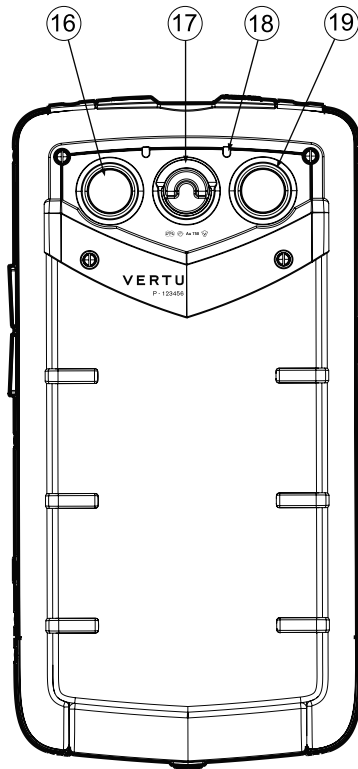
## Vertu phone layout - front



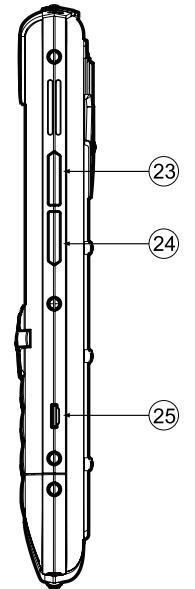
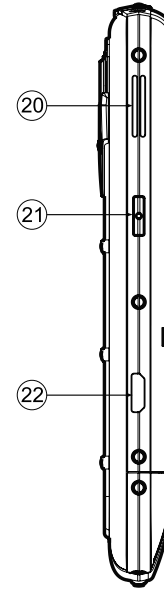




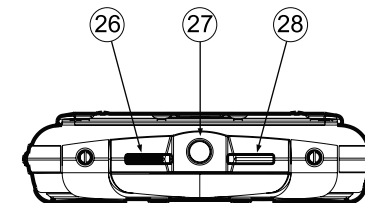
Vertu phone layout – back



Vertu phone – left and right views



Top view



# Getting started

## Keys

Label No.	Keys
1	Microphone
2	Call key
3	Menu
4	Calendar
5	Left Select key
6	Home key
7	Earpiece
8	My Key
9	Right Select key
10	Contacts
11	Email
12	End key
13	Middle Select key
14	Scroll keys (four way)
15	QWERTY keyboard
16	Camera
17	D-ring release for back cover
18	Secondary microphone
19	Flash/Flashlight
20	Loudspeaker
21	Vertu Concierge key
22	USB port
23	Volume increase
24	Volume decrease
25	Strap attachment point
26	Keypad lock
27	3.5-mm audio socket
28	Power key

## Setting up your phone

### Inserting the SIM card and battery



**WARNING:** Always switch the phone off and disconnect the charger before touching the battery.



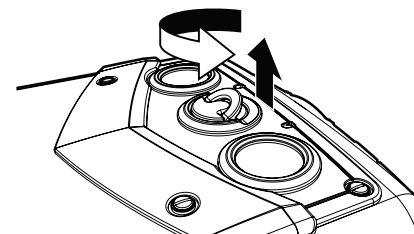
**WARNING:** Keep the SIM card out of the reach of small children.



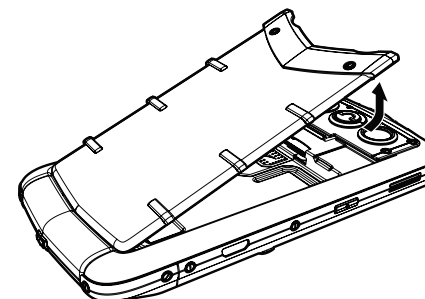
**IMPORTANT:** The SIM card and its contacts are easily damaged. Be careful when handling, inserting, or removing the SIM card.

### Removing the back cover

With the back of the Vertu phone facing you, lift the D-ring with your fingernail. Hold the D-ring between your thumb and forefinger and turn it counterclockwise a quarter of a turn until the cover pops open.



Gently lift off the back cover as shown.



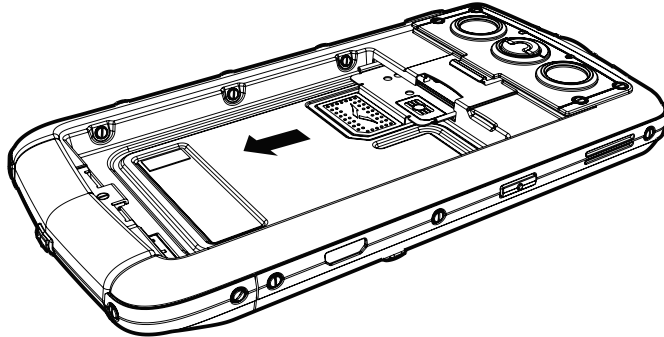


### Inserting the SIM card

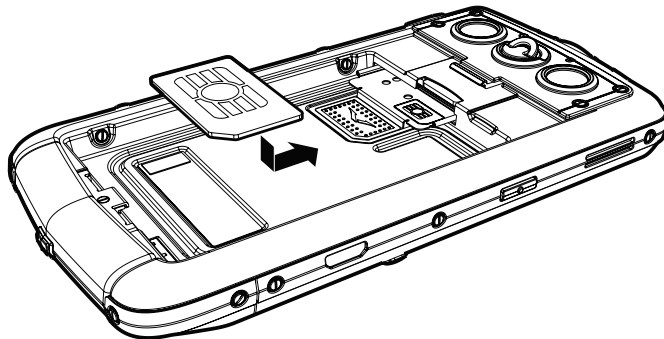


**IMPORTANT:** Always switch the phone off before inserting or removing the USIM/SIM card.

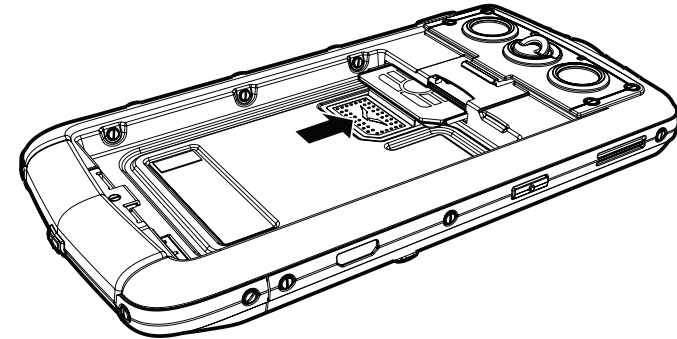
Slide the SIM card tray backwards.



Insert the SIM card into the SIM card tray, making sure that the beveled corner is located at the bottom right and the gold contact area is facing upwards.



Slide the SIM card holder back into the body of the phone until it is fully inserted.

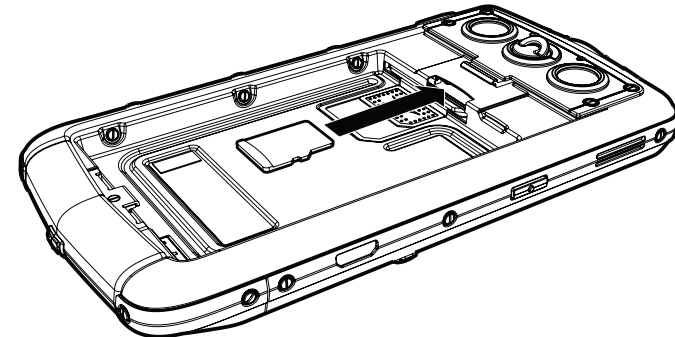


### Inserting the memory card



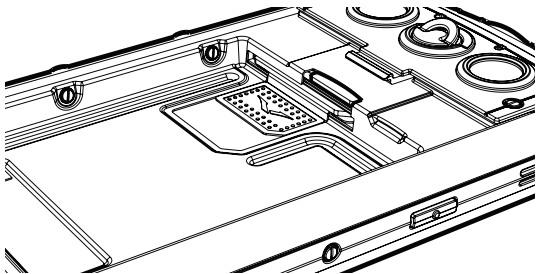
**IMPORTANT:** Always switch the phone off before inserting or removing a memory card.

Insert the memory card into the slot just above the SIM card tray, making sure that the gold contacts are facing downwards. Avoid touching the contacts of the memory card.



## Getting started

Push the card completely so that it locks into position. To retrieve the memory card, push the card further into the slot; it will then unlock and slide out to make it easy to remove.

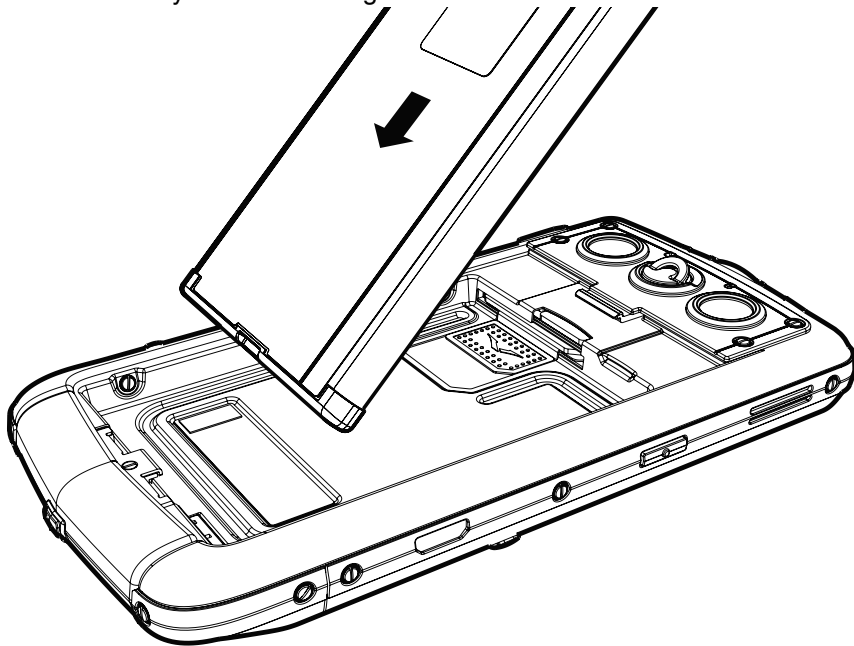


### Inserting the battery



**NOTE:** Ensure that the SIM and memory card are positioned correctly before replacing the battery.

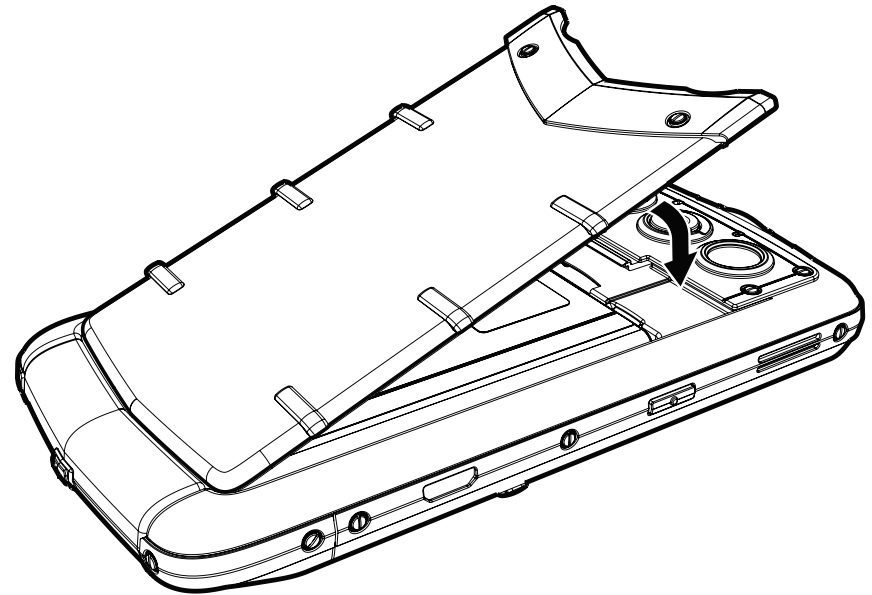
Locate the battery with the three terminals facing downwards. Position the battery so that the battery contacts align with the contacts present in the phone compartment, then place the battery into the housing.



### Replacing the back cover

Place the two tangs at the base of the back cover in their corresponding slots in the body of the phone.

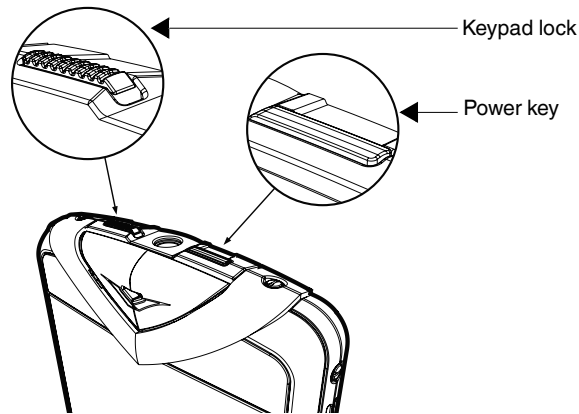
Lower the back cover into position and press gently until it clicks into place. The cover should close tightly using only light pressure.





### Switching on your Vertu phone

Press and hold the **Power** key (shown below) to switch on your Vertu phone.




The battery may need charging when you first receive your Vertu phone. Use the micro USB cable to connect to the charger or PC to charge the phone.

A list of options appears when you press the Power key:

Options	Description
Switch off	Switches off the phone
Lock keypad	Locks the keypad
General	Activates the General profile
Silent	Activates the Silent profile
Meeting	Activates the Meeting profile is activated
Outdoor	Activates the Meeting profile is activated
Pager	Activates the Meeting profile is activated
Offline	Puts the phone in offline mode (in this mode, you are no longer connected to the network)
Lock phone	Locks the phone
Activate power saving	Switches to power saving mode

### Locking and unlocking the keypad

You can lock the keypad on your Vertu phone to prevent operating them accidentally. The keypad lock (shown above) slides to lock the keypad. Slide it again to free the keypad lock.

When the keypad is locked, a key icon  appears. When you receive an incoming call, the keypad lock is automatically released. When the call is ended, the keypad relocks.



**TIP:** You can also lock the keypad by pressing the Left Select key, followed by the Right Select key.

### Automatic keyguard

Set the keyguard to automatically lock the keypad when the phone has not been used for a set time period.

To set up automatic keyguard:

1. On the home screen, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Phone and SIM card > Keypad Autolock Period**.
2. Press the Middle Select key and either enter a time in minutes for the autolock period or select None if you do not want to use this feature.

For more information on phone security, refer to “Security Settings” on page 32.



# Getting started

## Home key



The Home key is located at the top left of your phone. A single press of the Home key brings you back to the Home screen from anywhere.

The Home key flashes in a number of different ways depending on the status of your phone.

Indicator	Explanation
White pulsing light	Phone is on but inactive
Green pulsing light	Battery is charging
Solid green	Battery fully charged
Red flashing light	Battery is low and needs recharging
Blue flashing light	An event has occurred, such as a new message, missed call, or email
Red double flashing	Voice call is on mute

## My Key



My Key is a user configurable key that you can set up to provide quick access to up to four applications of your choice.

My Key is located on the top right side of your phone.

To set up My Key:

1. If you are setting up My Key for the first time, pressing My Key displays four fields where you can select an application to be added for each field.
2. Press the Middle Select key for an application location, select an application from the list, then press **OK**.



3. It is possible to select None for any of the four choices, or simply make only one active.

To select an application using My Key:

1. Press My Key, and the drop-down menu appears.
2. Use the Up and Down scroll keys to move between the icons, and press the Middle Select key to open the desired application.

To access the **My Key** function, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Personalization > My Key**.



## Dedicated keys

The **Menu**, **Calendar**, **Contacts**, and **Email** keys are the default dedicated keys. These dedicated keys give you quick access to certain applications and tasks. Each key has been assigned to an application or a task. The keys respond differently to a short or long press.

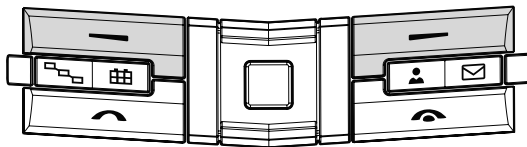
The default settings for dedicated keys are shown below:

Dedicated keys	Key number (see Page 14)	Short press opens	Long press opens
	3	<b>Menu</b>	Open applications
	4	<b>Calendar</b>	New meeting
	10	<b>Contacts</b>	New contact
	11	<b>Email</b>	New email

Certain keys are user configurable.

To configure a key, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Personalization > One-touch key**.

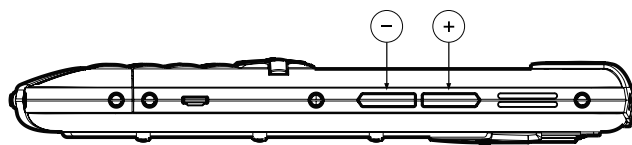
## Select keys



The Left Select and Right Select keys allow you to choose the options shown at the bottom of the display, directly above each Select key.

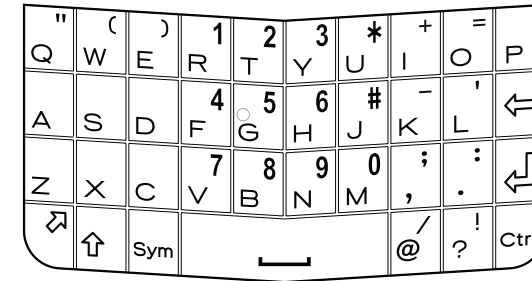
## Volume keys

You can increase or decrease the Volume by pressing the volume keys on the right side of your phone. See keys below, + (volume high) and - (volume low).



## QWERTY keyboard

Your Vertu phone uses a QWERTY keyboard. You can change the software language. Refer to **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Personalization > Language**, then select **Phone language** and **Writing language**.



## Writing text with the keyboard

- To insert punctuation marks, press the corresponding key or a combination of keys.
- To switch between the different character cases, press the Shift key
- To insert digits or characters printed at the top of keys, press and hold the corresponding key, or press and hold the Function key , then press the corresponding key.
- To lock the keyboard in Numbers mode, press the Function key twice.
- To delete a character, press the Backspace key .
- To delete several characters, press and hold the Backspace key.
- To insert characters and symbols that are not shown on the keyboard, press the Sym key, which displays two screens with special characters
- To copy text, press and hold the Shift key, then scroll to highlight the word, phrase, or line of text you want to copy. Press Ctrl + C. To insert the text into a document, move to the position in the document you want, then press Ctrl + V.
- To change the writing language, press Shift + Sym, or, alternatively, when using the keyboard to write text, select **Options > Input options > Writing language**, then choose a language from the options.
- To activate predictive text input, select **Options > Input options > Activate prediction**.

To set up settings for auto-completing words, text correction level, and number matches, select **Options > Input options > Settings**.

# Getting started



## Status bar icons

### Top status bar

Displays signals, data connectivity, and battery status icons along with the date.

#### Signal indicator icons

Indicator	Explanation
	Four-level signal indicator, currently showing the signal at full strength.
	Signal strength adequate, at half strength.
	Signal strength is low
	Displays when there is no signal, the phone is operating in offline mode, or no SIM is present in the phone.

#### Data connectivity icons

Indicator	Explanation
	GPRS (General Packet Radio Service) is part of the GSM cell phone standard.
	EGPRS data connection available. Enhanced GPRS. EGPRS is similar to GPRS, but it enables faster connection.
	3G data connection is available. 3rd generation mobile communications is a digital system for mobile communications that provides increased bandwidth.
	HSDPA data communication is available. HSDPA (High-Speed Downlink Packet Access) is an enhanced version of 3G.
	3G data communication is active.
	3G data communication is suspended.
	3G data communication is not available.

#### Battery indicator icons

Indicator	Explanation
	Battery is fully charged.
	Battery is low.
	Critical state where battery is about to run out. The red symbol displays without bars.

	Battery is charging, but the battery state is low.
	Battery is charging and is now full. The charger can be disconnected.
	Power saver mode active. (Press the <b>Power</b> key and select <b>Activate power saving</b> ).

### Lower status bar icons

A variety of icons appear in the lower status bar. Each icon displays when a certain state is active; some examples are shown in the table below.

Icons	Explanation
	New email notification.
	New message.
	Message is in outbox.
	Missed calls.
	Keypad locked.
	Bluetooth is enabled.
	USB connection is active.
	One or more alarms are set.
	Accurate time server is not available.
	WLAN connection available.
	WLAN connection active.
	WLAN secure connection active.





### Commands and audible indicators

This section describes useful commands and indicators that add flexibility to your phone.

#### Turn to silence calls or alarms

When the sensors in your device are activated, you can silence incoming calls or snooze alarms by turning your phone face down.

To define the turning options, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings and General > Sensors > Turning control**.

#### Flashlight

The camera flash can be used as a flashlight. To switch the flashlight on or off, on the **Home screen**, press and hold the space bar.



**WARNING:** Do not point the flashlight at anyone's eye.

#### Accessing a phone feature using a voice command

Using voice recognition, your Vertu phone can dial contacts and access phone features when you use voice commands.

To initiate a voice command:

1. From the home screen, press and hold the **Right Select** key until you hear a tone
2. Say the voice command.



**TIP:** If you have a headset connected, press and hold the headset button until you hear a tone.

You can access the following features on your Vertu phone by saying them as voice commands:

- Individual contacts – say the name.
- General, Silent, Meeting, Outdoor profiles, and so forth.
- Voice recorder (see **Voice recorder** in **Menu > Media > Recorder**).
- Messaging functions, including Messaging, new emails, read emails, and so forth.
- Organizer functions, including Calculator, Calendar, and Clock
- Call voice mailbox, but note you can only call mailboxes if the function is supported by your service provider.

### Setting up voice commands

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Phone > Voice comm.**

Voice comms. displays all the functions you can access with voice commands. Voice comms. also allows you to set the voice command you want to use for each function, or you can accept the default command prompted by the system.

#### Audible indicators

Your Vertu phone can be set to generate an audible signal when a particular event occurs. For example, when an email arrives at your phone, you can select a specific tune or set a generated voice alert. You can also set the phone to silent for specific events. This function is set using Audio Themes.

It is useful when you are using a headset and cannot view your Vertu phone.

For information on setting up voice alerts, refer to **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Themes > Audio themes**.

If you select voice alert, enter the text that will be read out by your phone or accept the default text.

# Setting up your phone



## Setting up your phone for the first time

When your Vertu phone is switched on for the first time, the first item displayed is Registration. The phone then takes you through the terms and conditions and Startup wizard. This wizard is designed to help you input the necessary settings as quickly and simply as possible.

When the Startup wizard has completed successfully, the email setup wizard immediately follows, allowing you to set up your first email account.



**NOTE:** If there is no SIM card in the phone on boot up, the system automatically sets the default date and time, and the Setup wizard does not run. Once you have inserted your SIM card, the Setup wizard runs.



**IMPORTANT:** When you are setting up your phone for the first time, make sure that you are in range of your service provider so that the system can configure the phone correctly. If a connection is not available, full registration cannot take place.

This chapter also describes Switch, which is an application to help you copy content, such as phone numbers, addresses, calendar items, and images, from a compatible phone to your new Vertu phone.

## Registering your Vertu phone

Vertu aims to provide you with the very best service possible. To enable us to do this, please register your Vertu phone.

Normally your phone will be registered during the setup process using the Vertu Setup wizard, but there are alternative ways to register your phone:

- Call Vertu Concierge using the dedicated key on your phone.
- Register at the [www.vertu.me](http://www.vertu.me) website.

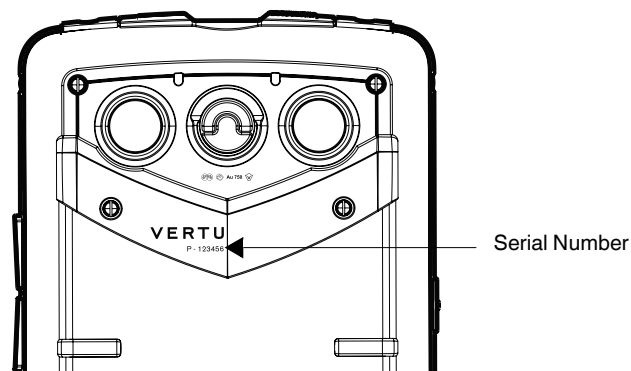
Selecting City Brief or Vertu Select will launch the registration process if the system detects that your phone has not yet been registered.

## Vertu Startup Wizard

When your Vertu phone is switched on for the first time, you are taken through a few simple steps to set up your phone. Prior to setup, you must insert a valid SIM card into your Constellation Quest and be in a location with cellular data connectivity.

You will first be asked to accept the terms and conditions. This will automatically enable the phone to use the core features of your Constellation Quest.

You will then be asked to register the product, which is essential for enabling the extensive free services offered on your Constellation Quest. If you are already a registered customer, you must enter your user name and password. If not, registration is quick, as all you have to do is enter a few details. To complete the registration process, you must enter the serial number of your Constellation Quest, which can be found on the battery cover at the back of the phone.



The Email wizard is now launched so you can configure the email accounts you want to use on the phone.

If you want to reapply any settings, just run the **Sett. wizard** located in **Menu > Ctrl. Panel**.

## Setting up your email accounts

Once the registration process is complete, your email accounts are normally set up using the **Email setup** wizard. However, if you do not want to set up your email accounts at this time, you can do it later. The **Email setup** wizard appears in the Information area of the **Home screen** if no email account is set up during startup.

The wizard helps you set up your Vertu.Me account, corporate email account, or personal accounts. You can have up to five personal accounts. When setting up an account, you must enter your user name and password.



## Setting up your phone

You can choose to synchronize your contacts, calendar, and tasks on your phone with either your corporate account or with your Vertu.me account.

Refer to the Email section for more information.

If you skip the wizard process, you can manually open the wizard later. On the **Home screen**, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Sett. wizard**.

### Switch

#### Transfer content

You can use the Switch application to copy content, such as phone numbers, addresses, calendar items, and images, from your previous phone to your present Vertu phone, provided the two phones are compatible.

The type of content you can transfer depends on the model of the phone from which you want to transfer content. If that phone supports synchronization, you can synchronize data between the devices. Your device notifies you if the other phone is not compatible.

If the other phone cannot be switched on without a SIM card, you must insert a SIM card into it. When your phone is switched on without a SIM card, the Offline profile is automatically activated, and transfer can take place.

#### Transfer content for the first time

1. To retrieve data from the other phone for the first time, on your phone, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Switch**.
2. Select the connection type you want to use to transfer the data. Both devices must support the selected connection type.
3. If you select Bluetooth connectivity as the connection type, connect the two phones. To have your phone search for phones with Bluetooth connectivity, select **Continue**. Select the phone from which you want to transfer content. You are asked to enter a code on your phone. Enter a code (1 to 16 digits), then select **OK**. Enter the same code on the other phone, then select **OK**. The phones are now paired.

Some earlier phones may not have the Switch application. In this case, the Switch application is sent to the other phone as a message. To install Switch on the other phone, open the message, and follow the instructions on the screen.




4. On your phone, select the content you want to transfer from the other phone. Once the transfer has started, you can cancel it and continue later.

Content is transferred from the memory of the other phone to the corresponding location in your phone. The transfer time depends on the amount of data to be transferred.

#### Synchronize, retrieve, or send content

Once data has been transferred for the first time, you can select one of the following options to start a subsequent transfer. The process depends on the model.

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Switch**.

-  Synchronize data in a two-way process, provided the other phone supports synchronization. If an item is deleted in one phone, it is deleted in both. You cannot restore deleted items with synchronization.
-  Retrieve content from the other phone.  
With retrieval, content is transferred from the other phone to your phone. You may be asked to keep or delete the original content in the other phone, depending on the phone model.
-  Send content from your phone to your other phone  
If you cannot send an item, depending on the type of the other phone, you can add the item to the Vertu folder, to C:\Vertu or E:\Vertu in your phone. When you select the folder to transfer, the items are synchronized in the corresponding folder in the other phone, and vice versa.

#### Use shortcuts to repeat a transfer

After a data transfer, you can save a shortcut with the transfer settings to the main view to repeat the same transfer later.

To edit the shortcut, select **Options > Shortcut settings**. For example, you can create or change the name of the shortcut.

A transfer log is shown after every transfer. To view the log of the last transfer, select a shortcut in the main view and **Options > View log**.

#### Handle transfer conflicts

If an item to be transferred has been edited in both phones, the phone attempts to merge the changes automatically. If this is not possible, there is a transfer conflict. Select **Check one by one**, **Priority to this phone**, or **Priority to the other phone** to solve the conflict.



# Home Screen and Clock

## Home screen

The **Home screen** displays a clock, an information area, a dynamic zone, and Web feeds in the Notification zone.

Icons and indicators appear in the status bars, providing information about the status of your Vertu phone.

Use the scroll keys to move the focus around the Home screen.

Press the Middle Select key when the focus is on a feature you want to open.

The **Home screen** contains the following areas:



1. Top status bar
2. Information area
3. Clock
4. Dynamic Information area
5. Notification zone
6. Lower status bar

The status bar icons are described in the chapter “Getting Started.”

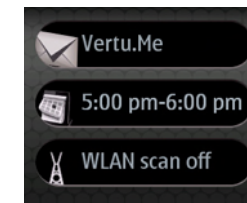
## Information area

The following three items are displayed in the Information Area, when the phone is first started:

- The Set up email wizard displays when the phone is first started.
- **WLAN scan off** is displayed. This function provides access to the **WLAN** application, which allows you to search for WLAN networks.
- **Calendar** displays with the message “No appointments” when your phone is first set up.

If you have set up at least two email accounts, the top two information areas display notifications from the accounts.

The information area below displays calendar appointments. The time of the next appointment is shown.



## Setting up the Information area on the home screen

There are a number of applications that can be displayed in the Information area. You can choose which applications you would like to display as follows:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Personalization > Standby mode > Mode settings > Home screen applications**.
2. Select the options that you want displayed on the screen. Note that there are 13 items or more that can be selected, and the system prioritizes the items that are displayed following the hierarchy shown in the **Home screen applications** menu. Thus, you may select an item, but it will only be displayed when its priority becomes high enough. You may, therefore, need to deselect items to ensure that an item is displayed.
3. Note that this function controls the display of media feeds and message alerts as well.



## Home Screen and Clock

### Clock

The clock has the following features:

- Displays time and date in either analog or digital format.
- Displays alarms set for the next 12 hours (analogue display only).
- Displays free and busy periods taken from the Calendar, around the clock bezel (analog display only)
- Uses the automatic time feature to keep accurate time.
- Displays the local time or, if you are roaming, displays both the local time and the time in your home location.



**WARNING:** The date and time are normally set by the automatic time feature and should not be tampered with.

Analog Clock, showing local time and home time (digital)



Digital Clock showing local time in the large digits and home time in small digits.



### Clock alarms and appointments

The clock, alarm and the world clock are all accessed via the clock, from the **Home screen**

### To change the clock time and set alarms on the home screen

To access the clock, scroll to the left or right to highlight the clock, then press the Middle Select key.

The Clock application appears with emphasis on the current **Time**.

Use the Left and Right scroll keys to display one of the three options: **Time**, **Alarms**, and **World clock**.

### To change the date and time settings from the main menu

Clock, date, and time settings are accessed as follows.

From the **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Date and time**, or **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Clock > Options > Settings**.

Change the settings as necessary.

### Clock – Alarms

To set an alarm:

1. With the Clock application open, in either the **Time** or **Alarms** tab, select **Options > New alarm**.
2. Scroll to **Alarm time**:, then select the time for the alarm.
3. Scroll to **Description**, then change the alarm text, if desired.
4. Scroll to **Repeat**. By default, the alarm is set to **Within 24 hrs**, which means the alarm is only valid during the next day. Press the Middle Select key and select an alternative option, if desired; the alarm can be repeated daily, weekly, on workdays, or not repeated.
5. Press **Done** to save the alarm. Set additional alarms, if desired.
6. The display shows when the next alarm is due to activate.

Any meetings or appointments set are displayed in the analog clock, as shown below.

Analog clock showing alarm at 7 o'clock.



# Home Screen and Clock

Analog clock showing busy from 3 to 4 o'clock.



To reset an alarm

1. If you want to reset an alarm, click on the **Options**, then select **Reset alarm**. Press **Done** when you have made your changes.

To remove an alarm

1. Highlight the alarm you want to delete.
2. Select **Options > Remove alarm**, then press **Yes** when prompted.

Set alarm ringtones

The selected alarm ringtone applies to all alarms.

1. Open the clock function.
2. Select **Options > Settings > Clock alarm tone**, then select an alarm in the displayed list.
3. Press **Back** to exit the **Settings**.

## World Clock and Dual Time

The Clock allows you to see timings of different locations in the world clock.

To add a specific location to your world clock, select, **Clock > World clock > Options > Add location**. It gives you a list of places you can view the time for. Selecting a particular place adds the location along with the current time at that place. You can change the clock settings by **Clock > World clock > Options > Settings**. This provides you with various options like setting the time zone, setting the home location, date and time format, clock type, and so on.

The clock includes a dual time handling system that comes into effect when you travel away from either:


- Your home country
- Your home time zone

Your phone handles the location using the mobile carrier code of the current network to obtain the current time, plus, if necessary, access to an online service for greater accuracy.

By default, both digital and analog clocks display the home time in digital format within the current clock zone. On returning to the home location, the clock will switch back to the single clock, only showing a single current time.

## Automatic Time settings

The automatic time feature keeps the phone clock accurate, and means that you do not need to set the time or date manually at different locations (but the SIM card must be present in the phone). When enabled, this sets the system clock to the local UTC value, from which the necessary GMT offsets are applied automatically to present the correct time and date.


If there is a problem with the automatic time update system, a warning icon  appears in the lower status bar to cover various situations such as:

- The current and home time and the current location are unknown so the time cannot be updated.
- On first power-up, after agreeing to the terms and conditions, the mobile phone network was out of reach.
- Travelling to a country with multi-time zone and where the geographic location is unknown.
- Clock is believed to be inaccurate due to length of time since the last successful synchronization.

The automatic time setting function can be turned on or off.

1. From the clock application > **Options > Settings > Automatic time update**. Or: **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Date and time > Automatic time update**.
2. When the setting is turned **On**, the following applies:
  - The Vertu clock automatically sets the time.
  - The phone is in dual time handling mode.



**NOTE:** If the automatic clock is out of service,  an icon displays on the bottom status panel notifying you that current time is inaccurate.



**NOTE:** On factory reset or restore you can re-set the clock options from the Setup wizard. If you skip the wizard or do not agree with the terms and conditions, then you must set the clock manually. However, you can still activate the automatic update feature from the **Date and time** feature in the **Settings** menu, as described above.





### Dynamic Information area

This area shows either **City Brief**, **Music Player**, or **Radio**. If neither the **Music Player** or **Radio** is active, then the **City Brief** link is displayed.

### Notification zone

The notification zone is dynamic and displays information about calls, messages, and news feeds.

By default, the notification zone displays information about recent unread messages, emails, and missed calls. News feeds are displayed when no outstanding items of higher priority are present.

To view a notification:

1. Scroll to the box, then press the **Middle Select** key to open it. A box is only visible if there are items present.
2. The example below displays three notifications; for missed calls, presence of new messages and voice mail.




Missed call

Unread messages

Voice mail

### Media feeds

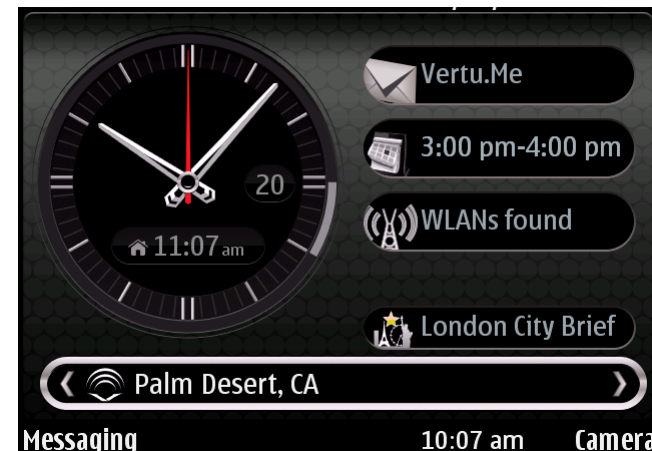
Media Feeds allows you to easily follow news headlines and your favorite news feeds. Media feeds are commonly found on news sites, blogs, and wiki pages. Media feeds are also known as RSS feeds or Web feeds and are identified on Web pages by the RSS icon .



**NOTE:** When the phone is set up for the first time, the voice mail notification appears in the Notification zone. **Media feeds** will only display when notifications for messages, missed calls, and voice mail are cleared.

### Reading a media feed

1. Use the scroll keys to highlight the **Media feeds** area.
2. Scroll left or right through **Media feeds** to view the latest headlines.
3. Press the Middle Select key to view a list of Media Feeds items.
4. Select a media feed and press the Middle Select key again to view the news feed, which can be opened in a Web page.
5. The list of news feeds also gives you an opportunity to select other news items.



**NOTE:** Alternatively, **Media feeds** can be opened from **Menu > Applications > Media feeds**.



**WARNING:** When using **Media feeds**, outside of your home network, roaming charges may be imposed by the network operator. Such changes can vary considerably depending on the operator.

To disable roaming, from the **Media feeds** panel, select **Options > Settings > Roaming behavior > Disabled**.

## Download media feeds

Media feeds can be downloaded from the **Latest headlines** panel.

1. Highlight **Media feeds** in the **Home screen** and press the **Middle Select** key to take you to the **Latest headlines**.
2. Scroll up or down and select the media feed you want to download.
3. Press the Middle Select key and a summary of the page downloads.
4. The item can be opened directly when it is downloaded using the Middle Select key.
5. Press **Back** to exit the application.

## To subscribe to a media feed from the browser

1. Open the Web page, locate the RSS icon, then select it with the **Middle Select** key.
2. A message, **Subscribe to feed?** is displayed. Then, select **Yes**.
3. The feed is displayed in the **Media feeds** panel.

## To subscribe to a media feed manually

1. Highlight **Media feeds** in the **Home screen**, then press the **Middle Select** key to take you to the **Latest headlines**.
2. Select **Options > Feed list**. The **Media feeds** panel appears.
3. Select **Options > Feed subscriptions**, and the **Subscribe to feeds** panel appears.
4. Select **Options > Add manually** and enter the URL of the media feed.
5. Press **Add**. The system validates the feed and adds it to the list or displays a warning message.

## Auto update of Media Feeds

Turn Media Feeds off in the **Settings** menu.

1. Highlight **Media feeds** in the **Home screen**, then press the Middle Select key to take you to the **Latest headlines**.
2. Select **Options > Feed list**. The **Media feeds** panel appears.
3. Choose **Options > Settings > Automatic update**, and select a time interval or **Off**.
4. Select **Back** until you exit the function.

## Organizing your media feeds

This function enables you to create folders and move your Web feeds into relevant folders.

1. Highlight **Media feeds** in the **Home screen**, then press the Middle Select key to take you to the **Latest headlines**.
2. Select **Options > Feed list**. The **Media feeds** panel appears.
3. To add a folder, press **Options > Add folder**, enter a folder name, then press **OK**.
4. To move an item, highlight it, then press **Options > Move**. Press the **Middle Select** key and the system displays the possible locations for the Web feed. Select the relevant folder and press **Move** when the item is moved to the relevant location.

## Sorting media feeds

**Media feeds** can be sorted by time or name.

1. When in one of the Media Feeds panels, select **Options > Sort by** and select either **Name** or **Time**.
2. The **Media feeds** on the panel are sorted accordingly.

## Adding predefined feeds to the display

1. Proceed up to step 2 in Organizing your **Media feeds**.
2. Press **Options > Feed subscriptions**.
3. The **Subscribe to feeds** panel appears.
4. Scroll through the list and select items. This is a toggle function; you can select or deselect an item with the Middle Select key. Alternatively, highlight an entry and press **Options > Subscribe** or **(Unsubscribe)**. Items within this list cannot be deleted.  
The feeds icon is grayed out when an item is de-selected.
5. Once an option has been selected, it is included in the media feeds.
6. Press **Back** to exit **Subscribe to feeds**. Save the changes when prompted. The system may take a moment to complete your requests.





## Deleting media feeds

Note that you cannot delete news items; you can only delete the feeds.


1. Proceed up to step 2 in Organizing your Media Feeds.
2. Highlight the item you want to delete. Press **Options** > **Delete**. Press the **Middle Select** key and the items are deleted.

## Media Feeds settings

1. Highlight the **Media feeds** in the **Home screen** and press the **Middle Select** key to take you to the Latest headlines page.
2. Press the **Options** > **Settings**. The Settings options are shown in the table below.

<b>Memory in use</b>	Select where to store data.
<b>Automatic update</b>	Select the frequency of automatic updates, or turn off the feature.
<b>Internet access point</b>	Set the access point for data transfer. Options includes <b>Always ask</b> , so you can select the most appropriate route.
<b>Roaming behavior</b>	Deactivate the Media Feeds data connection when not in your home network.

## Menu

The **Menu** key  displays all the top-level categories within your phone. From here, you can access all functions and applications.



Application	Function
<b>Calendar</b>	Enables you to keep track of your appointments, meetings, and special events.
<b>Contacts</b>	Holds the information of all your contacts.
<b>Log</b>	Displays information about missed, received, and dialed calls.
<b>Web</b>	Features rich Web browser
<b>Messaging</b>	Use messaging to send and receive text, multimedia, data, audio, and email messages.
<b>Media</b>	Provides access to functions that let you work with images, videos, music, and sound clips and listen to the radio. You can also post your images online.
<b>Ctrl. Panel</b>	Used for setting up your phone.
<b>Help</b>	Provides access to online Help for your phone.
<b>Applications</b>	View and manage the software packages installed on your phone.
<b>Maps</b>	Use Maps to locate your position, cities, streets, and services. You can also plan and execute driving and walking routes.
<b>Office</b>	Includes tools for handling documents, presentations, and spreadsheets, including a text editor, calculator, conversion program, and PDF reader, among others.
<b>Vertu</b>	Provides access to <b>Vertu Select</b> , <b>City Brief</b> , <b>Vertu Concierge</b> , <b>Technical Support</b> , Remote Assist, Download, and Registration.





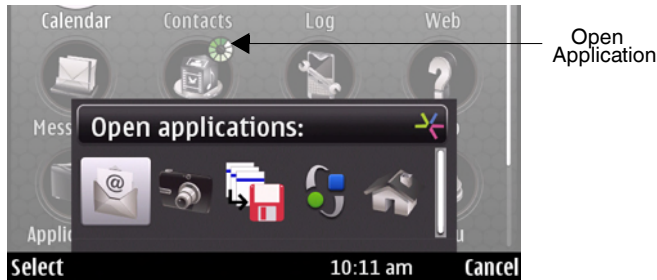
# Home Screen and Clock

## Task viewer

Your Vertu phone can run more than one application at a time. Open applications are indicated with a small green and white circle at the top of the application, as shown below.



A long press on the **Menu** key, , displays all the **Open applications**. Use the Right or Left scroll key to highlight an application. Press the Middle Select key to go to that application. To exit the application, highlight the application with the Right or Left scroll key and press the Delete key  on your keypad.



To reduce power consumption and extend battery life, it is best to quit applications you are not using.

## Control panel

The Control panel provides access to the functions used for setting up your Vertu phone. They are covered in detail in this user guide in their separate chapters.



Applications	Function
Connectivity	Sets up connectivity to other devices through <b>Bluetooth</b> , <b>WLAN</b> , <b>USB</b> , and so forth.
Phone	Sets up all aspects of the phone, including voice mail, speed dialing, encryption, and synchronization.
App. Mgr.	Download, install, and manage applications.
Themes	Set up themes and wallpapers.
Settings	Sets up functions including <b>Date &amp; time</b> settings, <b>Personalization</b> , <b>Telephone</b> , <b>Connection</b> , and <b>Applications</b> for configuring the <b>Camera</b> , <b>Calendar</b> , and other features.
Profiles	Set up profiles, such as <b>Meeting</b> , <b>Silent</b> , <b>Outdoor</b> , and <b>Pager</b> , to suit your needs.
Switch	Transfer data (such as contacts and calendar items) from a compatible Vertu phone, which is useful when setting up your new Vertu phone.
Modes	Switch between business and personal modes. Use Modes to select how you want your home screen to appear in each mode.
Clock	Set up time and date, alarms, time zone, and home location.



<b>Printers</b>	Set up a printer for your phone.
<b>Sett. wizard</b>	Access the setup wizard for registration and email setup.
<b>Net settings</b>	Sets up VoIP services.

### Setting up your personal and business preferences

You can switch between two home screen views, one for your personal use and another for business.

To toggle between Personal and Business home screen views, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Themes > General >**, then select a view.

To set up your Personal and Business modes, refer to refer to “Email account preferences” on page 67.



Your Vertu phone has a number of security features that help to prevent:

- Unauthorized use of your Vertu phone when your SIM card is inserted.
- Unauthorized use of your Vertu phone if a different SIM card is inserted.
- Unauthorized use of your SIM card in another phone.

## Security Settings

Your phone's Security module provides the security functions. It manages four security areas.

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security**.

<b>Phone and SIM card</b>	Adjusts the security settings for your device and SIM card. See "Phone and SIM card security" on page 32
<b>Certificate management</b>	Manages your security certificates See "Certificate manager" on page 34
<b>Protected content</b>	Adjusts your settings for DRM protected content See "Protected Content: Digital Rights Management (DRM)" on page 35
<b>Security module</b>	Manages your security module See "View and edit security modules" on page 36

To prevent accidentally dialing emergency numbers, avoid using codes that are similar to emergency numbers.

Codes are displayed as asterisks. When you change a code, enter the current code then the new code twice.

## Phone and SIM card security

### PIN code

The PIN code protects your device from unauthorized use. The PIN code is supplied with the SIM card.

When the PIN code security feature is active, you must enter the PIN code each time you switch on your Vertu phone. If you previously used your SIM card in another phone, the code is the same.



**IMPORTANT:** The SIM card will be blocked if you enter an incorrect PIN code three times in a row.

If this happens, you must contact your service provider to obtain the PUK (PIN Unblocking Key), then enter it into your phone.

The PUK cannot be changed. If you enter an incorrect PUK 10 times in a row, your SIM card will be permanently blocked.



**NOTE:** The default setting for the PIN code security feature is defined by your service provider. Some service providers do not allow you to disable the PIN code request.

### PIN code request

To activate or deactivate the PIN code security feature:

1. From the **Home screen**, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Phone and SIM card > PIN code request**.
2. Select **On** to enable the PIN code request, or **Off** to disable it.
3. Enter the PIN code (which must be 4 to 8 digits long), then select **OK**. A confirmation message is displayed.

### To change the PIN code



**NOTE:** To change the PIN code, the PIN code request must be set to On.

1. From the **Home screen**, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Phone and SIM card > PIN code**.
2. Press the Middle select, and when prompted, enter the current PIN code, then select **OK**.
3. When prompted, enter the new PIN code, then select **OK**.
4. Enter the new PIN code again for verification, then select **OK**. A confirmation message is displayed.



## PIN2 code

The PIN2 code is used to protect the advanced user functions of your SIM card, for example, fixed dialing. The PIN2 code must not be the same as the PIN code.



**NOTE:** The PIN2 code is supplied with some SIM cards. For more information, contact your service provider.

To change the PIN2 code:

1. From the **Home screen**, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Phone and SIM card > PIN2 code**
2. Press the Middle select, and when prompted, enter the current PIN2 code, then select **OK**.
3. When prompted, enter the new PIN2 code, then select **OK**.
4. Enter the new PIN2 code again for verification, then select **OK**. A confirmation message is displayed.



**IMPORTANT:** The PIN2-protected features of your SIM card will be blocked if you incorrectly enter your PIN2 code a number of times, normally after three consecutive attempts.

If this happens, you must contact your service provider to obtain the PUK2 (PIN2 Unblocking Key). Enter this into your phone to unblock the PIN2 code and restore your SIM card's full functionality.

## Keypad autolock period

This function allows you to set the keypad to lock automatically after a defined period.

1. On the **Home screen**, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Phone and SIM card > Keypad autolock period**.
2. Press the Middle select, then either enter a time in minutes for the autolock period, or select **None** if you do not want to use this feature.

## Phone autolock period

To set a timeout after which the device is automatically locked and can be used only if the correct **Lock code** is entered. When the device is locked, you can still answer incoming calls, and calls may still be possible to the official emergency number programmed into your device.

1. On the **Home screen**, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Phone and SIM card > Phone autolock period**.
2. Press the Middle select key, then enter a number for the timeout in minutes, or select **None** if you do not want to use this feature.
3. Enter the **Lock code** when prompted.

## Lock code

The lock code is used to unlock the device. To avoid unauthorized use of your device, change the lock code.

To set a new lock code for the phone autolock function:

1. On the **Home screen**, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Phone and SIM card > Lock code**.
2. The preset **Lock code** is 12345. Enter the current code and then the new code twice. The new code can be 4 to 255 characters long. Letters and digits can be used, and both uppercase and lowercase letters are accepted.
3. The device notifies you if the **Lock code** is not properly formatted.

## Lock if SIM card changed

To lock the phone if you change your SIM card, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Phone and SIM card > Lock if SIM card changed**.

To prevent the use of your device with an unauthorized SIM card, select **Change > Yes**. The device now asks for the **Lock code** every time a new SIM card is inserted.

## Remote phone locking

To lock your phone though your phone is not with you, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Phone and SIM card > Remote phone locking**.

To enable locking of your phone with a text message, if your phone is lost or stolen select **Enabled**. Write the locking message. You may need to enter the **Lock code** to change this setting. To use a remotely locked device again, enter the **Lock code**.

# Security

## Closed user group



**NOTE:** Closed user groups are only available if they are supported by your service provider.

A closed user group is a network service that allows you to restrict incoming and outgoing calls to the specific groups. Contact your service provider for more information about using this feature.



**NOTE:** When outgoing calls are limited to closed user groups, calls may be possible to the emergency numbers programmed in your Vertu phone, for example, 000, 08, 110, 112, 118, 119, 911, and 999, or other official emergency numbers.

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Phone and SIM card > Closed user group**.

Select **Default** to activate the groups agreed to by your network operator, or **On** to enter the index number of another group.

## Confirm SIM services

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Phone and SIM card > Confirm SIM services**.

To display the confirmation messages sent between the device and the network when you use network services supported by your SIM card, select **Change > Yes**.

## Other security measures: restricting calls

### Call barring



**NOTE:** Call barring is only available if it is supported by your service provider.

Call barring is a way of controlling calls and maintaining phone call security. Refer to “Call barring” on page 42.

## Fixed dialing



**NOTE:** Fixed dialing is only available if it is supported by your service provider.

Fixed dialing is a network service that allows you to restrict outgoing calls to the numbers you specify in a fixed dialing list. Contact your service provider for more information about using this feature.

## Certificate manager

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Certificate management**.

Digital certificates are used to verify the origins of software but do not guarantee safety. There are a number of different certificates available:

1. **Authority certificates**
1. **Trusted site certificates**
2. **Personal certificates**
3. **Phone certificates**

During a secure connection, a server may send a server certificate to your device. Upon receipt, it is cross-checked with an authority certificate stored in your device. You receive notification if the identity of the server is not authentic or if you do not have the correct certificate in your device.

You can download a certificate from a Web site or receive a certificate as a message. Certificates should be used when you connect to an online bank or a remote server to transfer confidential information. They should also be used if you want to reduce the risk of viruses or other malicious software, and to check the authenticity of software you download and install onto your device.



**TIP:** When you add a new certificate, check its authenticity.





## View certificate details

You can only be sure of the correct identity of a server when the signature and validity period of a server certificate have been checked.

To view certificate details, open a certificate folder, then select a certificate and **Options > Certificate details**.

One of the following notes may appear:

Certificate not trusted	You have not set any application to use the certificate. You may want to change the trust settings.
Expired certificate	The period of validity has ended for the selected certificate.
Certificate not valid yet	The period of validity has not yet begun for the selected certificate.
Certificate corrupted	The certificate cannot be used. Contact the certificate issuer.

## Certificate trust settings

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Certificate management**.

Trusting a certificate means that you authorize it to verify Web pages, email servers, software packages, and other data. Only trusted certificates can be used to verify services and software.



**IMPORTANT:** Even if the use of certificates makes the risks involved in remote connections and software installation considerably smaller, they must be used correctly in order to benefit from increased security. The existence of a certificate does not offer any protection in itself; the certificate manager must contain correct, authentic, or trusted certificates for increased security to be available. Certificates have a limited lifetime. If **Expired certificate** or **Certificate not valid yet** is displayed, even if the certificate should be valid, check that the current date and time in your device are correct.

Before changing any certificate settings, you must make sure that you really trust the certificate owner and that the certificate really belongs to the listed owner.

To change the trust settings, select a certificate and **Options > Trust settings**. Scroll to an application field, then press the scroll key to select **Yes** or **No**. You cannot change the trust settings of a personal certificate.

Depending on the certificate, a list of applications that can use the certificate is displayed.

Symbian installation	New Symbian operating system application.
Internet	Email and graphics.
App. Installation	New Java application.
Online certif. check	Online certificate status protocol.
VPN	Applicable to the VPN.

## Protected Content: Digital Rights Management (DRM)

Other devices can send you media files that are protected by usage rights and for which you need activation keys. Some activation keys contain unique IDs that allow the media file provider to track the sending device. Some providers use this service to reward people who distribute their media files to others who buy usage rights for the files.

**Protected content** allows you to choose whether providers of media objects protected by usage rights are allowed to track transfers and transactions of the objects.

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Protected content**.
2. To allow media file providers to track the files sent to you, select **Yes** in **Track protected object**.
3. To save your setting, select **Back**.

## Background

Content owners may use different types of digital rights management (DRM) technologies to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses various types of DRM software to access DRM-protected content. With this device, you can access content protected with WMDRM 10 and OMA DRM 2.0. If certain DRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask that its access to new DRM-protected content be revoked. Revocation may also prevent renewal of the relevant DRM-protected content already in your device. Revocation of DRM software does not affect the use of content protected by other types of DRM or the use of non-DRM-protected content.

License acquisition	Options are Automatic or Confirm first
Allow usage reporting	Yes or No
Track protected object	Yes or No
License deletion	"License store is not yet full. Delete licenses anyway?" Options are Yes or No.

# Security



## View and edit security modules

Security modules usually contain security certificates and public and private keys and improve security of network connections. Security modules also allow you to use digital certificates.

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Security > Security module**.

- To view or edit a **Security module**, select the module from the list.
- To view detailed information about a security module, select **Options > Security details**.
- To edit the PIN codes for the security module, open the module, then select **Module PIN** to edit the PIN code for the **Security module** or **Signing PIN** to edit the PIN code for digital signatures. You may not be able to change these codes for all security modules.
- The key store contains the contents of the security module. To delete the key store, select **Options > Delete**. You may not be able to delete the key store of all security modules.

## Browser security

Security features may be required for some services, for example, online banking or shopping. For such connections, you need security certificates and possibly a security module, which may be available on your SIM card. For more information, contact your service provider.





## Making a call

Before making a call, check that you have a good signal and the battery is charged.

### Making a call from the home screen

To make a call from the **Home screen**:

1. Using the keypad, enter the phone number you want to call. To delete a digit, press the backspace key.
2. Press the **Call** key.
3. To end the call (or to cancel the call attempt), press the **End** key. Pressing the **End** always ends a call, even if another application is active.

If you press the Middle Select key instead of the **Call** key, you can make a **Voice call**, **Video call**, or save the number to Contacts.

In addition, you can make a call in **Number mode** or **Alpha mode**. Use **Number mode** for most calls, while **Alpha mode** is selected when alphanumeric characters are appropriate, such as for Internet calls. This is a toggle function.

### Making an emergency call



**WARNING:** Your Vertu phone, like any wireless phone, operates using radio signals, wireless and landline networks, and user-programmed functions. Because of this, connections under all conditions cannot be guaranteed. Therefore, you should never rely solely on a wireless phone for essential communications, for example, medical emergencies.



**WARNING:** If certain features are in use, you may need to turn them off before you can make an emergency call. For more information, contact your service provider.



**WARNING:** Some networks require a valid SIM card to be in the phone in order to make emergency calls.

## Call functions and Call Log

### To make an emergency call:

1. Press the Home key to return to the **Home screen**.
2. Enter a valid emergency number, for example, 000, 08, 110, 112, 118, 119, 911, or 999.



**WARNING:** Emergency numbers vary by location and those listed above may not be supported by your service provider.

3. Press the **Send** key.



**NOTE:** When making an emergency call, remember to give all the necessary information as accurately as possible.



**NOTE:** Remember that your phone may be the only means of communication at the scene of an accident—do not end the call until you are sure that it is appropriate to do so.

### Making a call from Contacts

To make a call from Contacts:

1. Press the **Contacts** key to access your **Contacts**.
2. Locate the required contact by scrolling to the desired name, or enter the first letters or characters of the name in the "Type to search" field to narrow the search.
3. Scroll to the required number, then press the **Call** key.

### Making a call from the call logs

To make a call from the call logs:

1. From the **Home screen**, press the **Call** key, and use the left and right scroll keys to move between **Missed calls**, **Received calls** and **Dialed numbers**. Alternatively, select **Menu > Log** and then select the call category.
2. Select **Recent calls**.
3. Scroll to the required name or number, then press the **Call** key to make the call.
4. Alternatively, press the **Options** key for alternative actions, such as **Create message**.

# Call functions and Call Log

## Calling the last dialed number

To call the last dialed number, press the **Call** key twice.



**TIP:** If you have a headset connected, you can call the last dialed number by pressing the headset button twice (depending on the headset type).

## Automatic redial

Occasionally, a call may not connect because your network is experiencing heavy traffic or the party called is busy. With the automatic redial feature activated, your Vertu phone redials the number up to 10 times, and notifies you when the network is available.

To activate automatic redial:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call > Automatic redial**.
2. Select **On** by pressing the Middle Select key.

## Making a call using voice dialing

Using voice recognition, your Vertu phone can dial contacts and access menu items in response to your voice commands. These commands do not depend on the speaker's voice, so you do not need to record voice tags in advance.



**TIP:** Voice dialing works best for long unique names.

To make a call to a contact using voice dialing:

1. From the **Home screen**, press and hold the **Right Select** key until you hear a tone. If you have a headset connected, press and hold the headset button until you hear a tone.
2. Say the name of the contact you want to call.
3. Select the required contact in the displayed list. Your Vertu phone automatically dials the number.
4. If you do not select a contact in the list within five seconds, the first option is automatically dialed.



**TIP:** If the contact you want to call is not listed, select **Quit** to exit voice dialing.

## Speed dialing



Speed dialing lets you quickly dial numbers from the **Home screen**. You can save up to eight numbers in your speed dial list.

## Activating speed dialing

To activate speed dialing:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call > Speed dialing**.
2. Select **On** by pressing the Middle Select key.

## Assign a number to the speed dial list

To assign a phone number to one of the number keys (2–9):

1. Press the **Contacts** key.
2. Scroll to the required number, open it, then select **Options > Assign speed dial**.
3. Select the speed dial number to assign to the phone number. A confirmation message is displayed.



**NOTE:** Speed dial number 1 is reserved for calling your voice mailbox.

## Making a call using speed dialing

To make a call using **Speed dialing**:

From the **Home screen**, simply press and hold the numeric key assigned to the required phone number.

## Deleting a speed dial

To delete a speed dial:

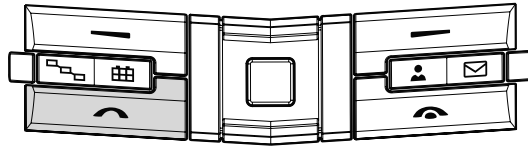
1. Press the **Contacts** key.
2. Scroll to the required number, open it, then select **Options > Remove speed dial**.
3. Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.



### Answering a call

To answer an incoming call:

Press the **Call** key.



**TIP:** If you have a headset connected, you can answer an incoming call by pressing the headset button, if present.

### Anykey answer

With the **Anykey answer** feature activated, you can answer an incoming call by pressing any key except the **Power** key, selection keys, and **End** key.

To activate **Anykey answer**:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call > Anykey answer**.
2. Select **On** by pressing the Middle Select key.

### Silence the ringing tone of a call

To mute the ringing tone of an incoming call, select **Silence**.

If you do not want to answer a call, press the **End** key.

Note that if you have activated the **Voice call forwarding** function from **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call forwarding > Voice calls**, you also forward an incoming call you decline.

When you select **Silence** to mute the ringing tone of an incoming call, you can send a text message without rejecting the call, informing the caller that you cannot answer the call. Select **Options > Send message**. To set up this option and write a standard text message, select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call > Reject call with message** and complete **Message text**.

### Call waiting

You can answer a call while another call is in progress. To activate call waiting (network service), select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call > Call waiting**.

- To answer the waiting call, press the **Call** key. The first call is put on hold.
- To switch between the two calls, select **Swap**.
- To connect an incoming call or a call on hold with an active call and to disconnect yourself from the calls, select **Options > Transfer**.
- To end the active call, press the **End** key.
- To end both calls, select **Options > End all calls**.

### Automatic answer

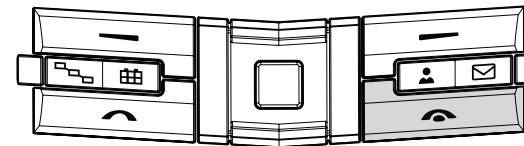
With the Automatic Answer feature activated, calls are automatically answered when a handsfree accessory is connected.

To activate Automatic Answer:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > General > Enhancement**.
2. Select either **Headset** or **Wireless car kit**.
3. Select **Automatic answer**.
4. Select **On**. The automatic answer icon is displayed on the Home screen.

### Rejecting or ending a call

To reject or end an incoming call:



Press the **End** key.



**TIP:** If you have a headset connected, you can reject an incoming call by pressing the headset button twice, if present.

### Multiple calls

To end an active call and replace it by answering the waiting call, select **Options > Replace**.

To end all active calls, select **Options > End all calls**.

Many of the options that you can use during voice calls are network services.



# Call functions and Call Log

## In-call options

### Adjusting volume

To adjust the volume during a call, use the **Volume** keys on the side of your phone. You can also use the Left and Right scroll keys to change the volume. If you have set the volume to **Mute**, select **Unmute** first.

### Putting a call on speakerphone

To put a call on speakerphone, select **Loudsp.** to activate the loudspeaker.

To switch back to the handset, select **Handset**.

Alternatively, select **Options > Activate loudspeaker** / **Options > Activate handset**.

### Putting a call on hold

To put a call on hold, press the **Send** or select **Options > Hold**. A notification is displayed.

To return to the call, press the **Send** or select **Unhold**.

To switch between the active call and call on hold, select **Options > Swap**.

### Muting a call

To activate mute when on a call, either press the **Concierge** key or select **Options > Mute**. The call mute icon is displayed .

To unmute the call, select the **Concierge** key again or press **Unmute**.

### Sending an image or a video clip

To send an image or a video clip in a multimedia message to the other party, select **Options > Send MMS**, then select **Media file** (in UMTS networks only). You can edit the message and change the recipient before sending. Press the **Call** to send the file to a compatible device.

### To send DTMF tone strings

Dual-tone multi-frequency (DTMF) signals are tones that can be used to access services such as voice mailboxes and automated billing systems. To send DTMF tone strings (for example, a password), select **Options > Send DTMF**. Enter the DTMF string or search for it in **Contacts**. To enter a wait (w) or pause character (p), press \* repeatedly.

To send the tone, select **OK**. You can add DTMF tones to the phone number or DTMF fields in a contact card.

## Putting a call on handsfree

If you have attached a compatible headset with Bluetooth connectivity, to route the sound to the headset, select **Options > Activate handsfree**. To switch back to the handset, select **Options > Activate handset**.



**TIP:** When you have only one active voice call, to put the call on hold, press the **Call**. To activate the call, press the **Call** key again.

## Menu

You can access the main menu while on a call by selecting the **Menu** key.

## Record

To record the conversation, select **Menu > Media > Recorder**. All parties are recorded.



### Voice mail



Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Phone > Call mailbox**.

Any voice mail messages are flagged for your attention in the Notification area of the **Home screen**. Click on the icon to access Messages. The icon displays the number of new messages. Dial your mailbox to access the voice mails. (See “Web feeds”, “Media feeds” and “Notification zone” ).

When you open the Voice Mail application (network service) for the first time, you are requested to enter the number of your voice mailbox.

- To call your voice mailbox, scroll to Voice Mailbox in the Notification area on the **Home screen**, then select **Options > Call voice mailbox**.
- To call your video mailbox, scroll to Video Mailbox in the Notification area on the **Home screen**, then select **Options > Call video mailbox**.
- If you have configured net call settings to your device and have an Internet call mailbox, to call the mailbox select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Phone > Call mailbox** and select **Options > Call Internet call mbx**.
- To call your mailbox on the home screen, press and hold 1; or press 1, then press **Call**. Select the mailbox you want to call.
- To change the mailbox number, select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Phone > Call mailbox** and select **Options > Change number**.
- Call mailbox can be set up as an item on **My Key**. To do this, access **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Personalization > My Key**, then select **Call mail**.

### Multiparty calls

#### Making a second call

To make a call while already on a call:

1. Select **Options > New call**.
2. Enter the second number, or select **Search** to use a number Contacts.
3. Select **Call**. The first call is put on hold.

#### Answering or rejecting a second call

To answer an incoming call while already on a call, press the **Send** key or select **Answer**. The first call is put on hold.

To reject an incoming call while already on a call, select **Reject**.



**NOTE:** To interact with a second call, call waiting must be active. For information on activating call waiting, see **Call waiting**.

#### Toggling between calls

To toggle between calls, press the **Send** key or select **Swap**.

#### Creating a conference call

You can create a conference call when you have two calls on your Vertu phone—one that is active and one that is on hold. By creating a conference call, the separate calls are joined together. Each party is then able to talk with the others.

To create a conference call, select **Options > Conference**.

#### Adding a party to a conference call

To add a new party to an ongoing conference call:

1. Make a second call. Select **Options > New call**. The conference call is put on hold.
2. When the second call has connected, select **Options > Add to conference**.

#### Having a private conversation with a conference call party

To have a private conversation with a conference call party, you must separate that party from the conference call. To do this:

1. Select **Options > Conference > Private** call.
2. Select the party you want to have a private conversation with.
3. To cut off a participant, select **Conference > Drop a participant**.

# Call functions and Call Log

## Call barring



Call barring functions are located in **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call barring**.

You can bar specific numbers from being called or received with the phone (network service). To change the settings, you need the barring password from your service provider. Call barring affects all call types.

Select from the following voice call barring settings:

- **Outgoing calls** — Prevent making voice calls with your phone.
- **International calls** — Prevent calls to foreign countries or regions.
- **International calls except to home country** — Prevent calls to foreign countries or regions, but allow calls to your home country.
- **Incoming calls** — Prevent incoming calls.
- **Incoming calls when roaming** — Prevent incoming calls when outside your home country.

To work with voice call barring:

1. In **Call barring**, select the barring option, then **Options > Check status**.
2. To activate the selected call option, **Options > Activate**.
3. To deactivate the selected call option, **Options > Deactivate**.
4. To deactivate all voice call barring, select a barring option and **Options > Deactivate all barrings**.
5. To change the password used for barring voice and fax calls, select **Options > Edit barring password**.
6. Enter the current code, then the new code twice. The barring password must be four digits long. For details, contact your service provider.

## Call settings



To view call settings, go to:

Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call**.

Select from the following:

Call settings	Description
<b>Send my caller ID</b>	Displays your phone number to the person you are calling.
<b>Send my Internet call ID</b>	Displays your Internet call address to the person you are calling when making an Internet call.
<b>Call waiting</b>	Sets the device to notify you of incoming calls while you are on a call (network service).
<b>Internet call waiting</b>	Sets the device to notify you of new incoming Internet calls while you are on a call.
<b>Internet call alert</b>	Select On to set your device to alert you of incoming Internet calls. If you select Off, you only receive notifications of missed calls.
<b>Reject call with message</b>	Reject a call and send a text message to the caller.
<b>Message text</b>	Write the standard text message that is sent when you reject a call.
<b>Own video in recvd. call</b>	Allow or deny sending video during a video call from your device.
<b>Image in video call</b>	Display a still image if video is not sent during a video call.
<b>Automatic redial</b>	Set your device to make up to 10 attempts to connect the call after an unsuccessful call attempt. To stop automatic redialling, press the end key.
<b>Show call duration</b>	Displays the length of a call during the call.
<b>Summary after call</b>	Displays the length of a call after the call.
<b>Speed dialing</b>	Activates speed dialing.
<b>Anykey answer</b>	Activates anykey answer.



Call settings	Description
<b>Line in use</b>	This setting (network service) is shown only if your SIM card supports two subscriber numbers, that is, two phone lines. Select which phone line you want to use for making calls and sending text messages. You can answer calls on both lines regardless of the selected line. If you select Line 2 and have not subscribed to the network service, you are not able to make calls. When Line 2 is selected, it is displayed on the home screen.
<b>Line change</b>	Prevents line selection (network service), if supported by your SIM card. To change this setting, you need the PIN2 code.
<b>Contact search</b>	Activate contact search on the home screen.

Note that the available options may vary.

## Call forwarding



The call forwarding feature allows you to divert incoming calls to another phone number or mailbox if you are not able to answer them. This ensures that you do not miss any calls.



**NOTE:** Call forwarding is only available if it is supported by your service provider.

To set up call forwarding:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call forwarding > Voice calls**.
2. Select the conditions under which you would like to forward incoming calls:
  - **All voice calls** - Forward all calls.
  - **If busy** - Forward calls when you are already on a call.
  - **If not answered** - Forward calls when you cannot answer them.
  - **If out of reach** - Forward calls when your Vertu phone is switched off or out of network coverage.
  - **If not available** - Forward unanswered calls or forward calls when your phone is busy or out of network coverage.



**TIP:** To cancel all call forwarding, select **Deactivate all forwarding**.

3. Select **Activate**.



**TIP:** To view the current status of the forwarding, select **Check status**. The current status is displayed. To view the number that calls are forwarded to, select **Number**.



**TIP:** To cancel this forwarding, select **Deactivate**.

4. If you activated the call forwarding for the option **If not answered** or **If not available**, select the destination of the call, and choose a time after which forwarding should take place.



**NOTE:** Canceling all call forwarding may affect the ability to receive voice mail messages.



**NOTE:** Your service provider may not allow you to cancel all call forwarding. Contact your service provider for further information.

## Call waiting

Call waiting notifies you of an incoming call while you are on another call. You can then answer or reject the second call. For information on how to answer or reject a second call, see **Answering or rejecting a second call**.



**NOTE:** Call waiting is only available if it is supported by your service provider.

To set up call waiting:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call > Call waiting**.
2. Select **Activate**.



**TIP:** To view the current call waiting status, select **Check status**.



**TIP:** To cancel call waiting, select **Deactivate**.



# Call functions and Call Log



## Call duration display

This feature displays the call duration during each call.

To activate the **Show call duration** feature:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call > Show call duration**.
2. Select **On**.

## Summary after call

This feature displays the call duration after each call.

To activate the **Summary after call** feature:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call > Summary after call**.
2. Select **On**.

## Send my caller ID

This feature allows call recipients to view your phone number on their phones when you call them.

To change the caller ID setting:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call > Send my caller ID**.
2. Select one of the following options:
  - **Set by network** - To use the default setting supplied by your service provider.
  - **Yes** - To show your phone number to all call recipients.
  - **No** - To hide your phone number from all call recipients.

## Network



### Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Network

Networks allows you to select the network type and selection method and indicate when to use your phone in microcellular networks.

To select the type of network to use, select **Network mode**. Select the network type, then select **OK**. This setting may be preset for your phone, and you may not be able to select it.

To define how to choose between different available networks, select **Operator selection > Options > Change > Automatic** or **Manual**.

Select **Manual** if you know that a network is less expensive or transmits data faster than another.

To indicate when to use your phone in a microcellular network (MCN), select **Cell info display > Options > Change > On**. The MCN indicator is only displayed in standby mode.

Note that in a microcellular network, local calls can cost less.

To change the network settings:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Network**.
2. Select one of the following options:
  - **Network mode** - Select the type of network to use; options include Dual Mode, UMTS (3G), and GSM.
  - **Operator selection** - Options are **Automatic** or **Manual**.
  - **Cell info display** - Options are **On** or **Off**.
3. To save your settings, select **Back**.

Note that the available options may vary.



### Licenses



#### About Licenses

Select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Phone > Licenses**.

Some media files, such as images, music, or video clips, are protected by digital usage rights. The licenses for such files may allow or restrict their usage. For example, with some licenses you may listen to a song only a limited number of times. During one playback session you may rewind, fast-forward, or pause the song, but once you stop it, you have used one of the instances allowed.

#### Use licenses

Digital rights management (DRM)-protected content comes with an associated license that defines your rights to use the content.

If your device has OMA DRM-protected content, to back up both the license and the content, use the backup feature of Ovi Suite.

Other transfer methods may not transfer the license which needs to be restored with the content for you to be able to continue the use of OMA DRM-protected content after the device memory is formatted. You may also need to restore the license in case the files on your device get corrupted.

If your device has WMDRM-protected content, both the license and the content will be lost if the device memory is formatted. You may also lose the license and the content if the files on your device get corrupted. Losing the license or the content may limit your ability to use the same content on your device again. For more information, contact your service provider.

Some licenses may be connected to a specific SIM card, and the protected content can be accessed only if the SIM card is inserted in the device.

To view your licenses by type, select **Valid licenses**, **Invalid licenses**, or **Not in use**.

To view the license details, select **Options > License information**.

The following details are displayed for each media file:

- **Status** — The status is **License is valid**, **License expired**, or **License not yet valid**.
- **Content sending** — **Allowed** indicates that you can send the file to another device.
- **Content in phone** — **Yes** indicates that the file is in the device and the path of the file is displayed. **No** indicates that the related file is not currently in the device.

To activate a license, in the licenses main view, select **Invalid licenses > Options > Get license**. Establish a network connection at the prompt, and you are directed to a website where you can purchase rights to the media.

To remove file rights, go to the desired file, and select **Options > Delete**. If there are several rights related to the same media file, all the rights are deleted.

The group license view displays all of the files related to a group right. If you have downloaded multiple media files with the same rights, they are all displayed in this view.

You can open the group view from either the valid licenses or invalid licenses tabs.

To access these files, open the group rights folder.

# Call functions and Call Log

## Call Log



The Call **Log** feature displays information about the calls you missed, received, and made recently. You can also view information about message recipients, packet data, and the number of messages sent and received.

Call history entries are displayed in chronological order. New entries are added to the top of the lists, moving older entries down accordingly. If a new entry is added to a full list, the last entry in the list is deleted.

## Viewing recent call information



To view recent call information:

1. Select **Menu > Log**. The display shows **Recent calls > Call duration** and **Packet data**. Select the call category you want.
2. If **Recent calls** is selected, three categories are displayed, Missed Calls, **Received calls**, and **Dialed numbers**. Select the relevant option.

## Viewing Call Log



To view the details of all calls in:

1. Select **Menu > Log**. Use the Right scroll key to tab to the right and show all calls listed in chronological order.
2. All types of calls are displayed, prefaced with **Voice**, **Pack.**, **SMS**, and so on. Missed calls are flagged in red, outgoing calls in blue, and received calls in green.
3. Scroll through the list, then press the **Middle Select** key to view the details of a particular call.
4. To focus your search, select **Options > Filter** to sort calls by type.
5. Numbers can be used for calling or saved to **Contacts**, using the relevant command in the **Options** menu.
6. **Settings** allows you to set the length of time **Log** entries are stored. The default is 30 days.

## Clearing log lists

To clear log lists:

1. Select **Menu > Log**. Right scroll to the Calls list, then select **Options**.
2. Select the **Clear log** command, which deletes all log entries, even if only a filtered selection is displayed.



**NOTE:** Lists are cleared immediately without confirmation requests. When lists have been cleared, the information cannot be recovered.

## Viewing call duration



To view information about the duration of calls made and received by your Vertu phone:

1. Select **Menu > Log > Call duration**.
2. Select **Last call/Received calls/Dialed numbers/All calls** to view.



**TIP:** To clear all call duration lists, select **Clear timers**. You must enter the security code. For information about the security code, see **View and edit security modules** in **Security**.

## Viewing packet data counters



To view information about the volume of packet data (in bytes) sent and received:

1. Select **Menu > Log > Packet data**.
2. Select the desired item.



**NOTE:** SMS messages sent over the General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) are not included in packet data counters or timers.



**TIP:** To clear all packet data counters, select **Clear counters**. You must enter the security code. For information about the security code, see **View and edit security modules** in **Security**.



### Making a video call



When you make a video call (network service), you can see a real-time, two-way video between you and the call recipient. The live video image or video image captured by the camera in your device is shown to the video call recipient





**NOTE:** The Vertu phone's camera is on the back of the phone, making the video call function more suited to showing other people or objects to the recipient, rather than face-to-face communication.

To make a video call, you must have a USIM card and be in the coverage area of a UMTS network. For availability of and subscription to video call services, contact your network service provider.


Video calls can only be made between two parties. They can be made to compatible mobile devices or ISDN clients. Video calls cannot be made while another voice, video, or data call is active.

### Icons

 You are not receiving video (the recipient is not sending video or the network is not transmitting it).

 You have denied video sending from your device. To send a still image instead, select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call > Image in video call**.

Even if you are denied video sending during a video call, the call is still charged as a video call. Check the pricing with your service provider.

1. To start a video call, enter the phone number in the home screen, press the **Middle Select** key, then select **Video call**.  
Or:  
From **Contacts** select a contact and number then press the **Middle Select** key and select **Call > Video call**.
2. The camera on the back is used for video calls. Starting a video call may take a while. The **Waiting for video image** message is shown. If the call is not successful (for example, video calls are not supported by the network, or the receiving device is not compatible), you are asked if you want to try a normal call or send a text or multimedia message instead.  
The video call is active when you see two video images, and hear the sound through the loudspeaker. The call recipient may deny video sending , in which case you only hear the sound and may see a still image or a gray background graphic.
3. To end the video call, press the **End** key.

### Options during video calls

To switch between showing video or hearing only sound, select **Options > Enable** or **Disable** and the desired option.

- To take a snapshot of the video you are sending, select **Options > Send snapshot**. Video sending is paused and the snapshot is shown to the recipient. The snapshot is not saved. Press **Cancel** to resume sending video.
- To zoom your image in or out, select **Options > Zoom**.
- To route the audio to a compatible headset with Bluetooth connectivity attached to your device, select **Options > Activate handsfree**.
- To route the audio back to the loudspeaker of your device, select **Options > Activate handset**.
- To change the video quality, select **Options > Video preference**. The frame rate for normal quality is 10 fps. Use **Clearer detail** for small, static details. Use **Smoother motion** for moving images.
- To adjust the volume during a video call, use the **Volume** key on the side of the device.

### Answer or decline a video call

When a video call arrives,  is displayed.

- To answer the video call, press the **Call key**. **Allow video image to be sent to caller?** is displayed. To start sending live video image, select **Yes**.  
If you do not activate the video call, you only hear the sound of the caller. A gray screen replaces the video image.
- To replace the gray screen with a still image captured by the camera in your device, select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings > Phone > Call > Image in video call**.
- To end the video call, press the **End**.



# Call functions and Call Log

## Video sharing

Use video sharing (network service) to send live video or a video clip from your mobile device to another compatible mobile device during a voice call.

The loudspeaker is active when you activate video sharing.

If you do not want to use the loudspeaker for the voice call while you share video, you can also use a compatible headset.



**WARNING:** Continuous exposure to high volumes may damage your hearing. Listen to music at moderate levels, and do not hold the device near your ear when the loudspeaker is in use.

## Video sharing requirements

Video sharing requires a UMTS connection. For more information on this service, UMTS network availability, and fees associated with using the service, contact your service provider.

To use video sharing, you must do the following:

- Ensure that your device is set up for person-to-person connections.
- Make sure you have an active UMTS connection and are within UMTS network coverage. If you move outside the UMTS network during a video sharing session, the sharing stops while your voice call continues.
- Ensure that both the sender and recipient are registered to the UMTS network. If you invite someone to a sharing session and the recipient's device is not in the UMTS network coverage area or does not have video sharing installed or person-to-person connections set up, the recipient does not receive invitations. You receive an error message that indicates that the recipient cannot accept the invitation.

## Video sharing settings

To adjust video sharing settings, select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings and Connection > Video sharing**.

To set up video sharing, you must have person-to-person and UMTS connection settings.

## Person-to-person connection settings

A person-to-person connection is also known as a session initiation protocol (SIP) connection. The SIP profile settings must be configured in your device before you can use video sharing. Contact your service provider for the SIP profile settings, and save them to your device. Your service provider may send you the settings or give you a list of the required parameters.

To add a SIP address to a contact:

1. Select **Menu > Contacts**.
2. Select the contact, or create a new contact.
3. Select **Options > Edit**.
4. Select **Options > Add detail > Share video**.
5. Enter the SIP address in the format username@domainname (you can use an IP address instead of a domain name).

If you do not know the SIP address for the contact, you can use the phone number of the recipient, including the country code, to share video (if supported by the network service provider).

## UMTS connection settings

To set up your UMTS connection:

- Contact your service provider to establish an agreement for you to use the UMTS network.
- Make sure the UMTS access point connection settings for your device are configured properly. For more information about the settings, contact your service provider.

## Share live video or video clips

During an active voice call, select **Options > Share video**.

1. To share live video during the call, select **Live video**.  
To share a video clip, select **Video clip** and the clip you want to share. You may need to convert the video clip into a suitable format to be able to share it. If your device notifies you that the video clip must be converted, select **OK**. Your device must have a video editor for the conversion to work.
2. If the recipient has several SIP addresses or phone numbers, including the country code, saved in the contacts list, select the desired address or number. If the SIP address or phone number of the recipient is not available, enter the address or number of the recipient, including the country code, then select **OK** to send the invitation. Your device sends the invitation to the SIP address.



Sharing begins automatically when the recipient accepts the invitation.

Options during video sharing

🔍 Zoom the video (available for sender only).

✳️ Adjust the brightness (available for sender only).

🔇 or 🔊 Mute or unmute the microphone.

🔊 or 🔇 Turn the loudspeaker on or off.

⏸️ or ▶️ Pause and resume video sharing.

🖥️ Switch to full screen mode (available for receiver only).

3. To end the sharing session, select **Stop**. To end the voice call, press the **End**.

When you end the call, video sharing also ends.

To save the live video you shared, select **Yes** when prompted. The device notifies you of the memory location of the saved video. To define the preferred memory location, select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Settings and Connection > Video sharing > Preferred saving memory**.

If you access other applications while you are sharing a video clip, sharing is paused. To return to the video sharing view and continue sharing, on the home screen, select **Options > Continue**.

### Accept an invitation

When someone sends you a video sharing invitation, the invitation message displays the sender's name or SIP address. If your device is not set to silent, it rings when you receive an invitation.

If someone sends you a share invitation and you are not within the UMTS network coverage area, you will not know that you received an invitation.

When you receive an invitation, select from the following:

- **Yes** — Accept the invitation, and activate the sharing session.
- **No** — Reject the invitation. The sender receives a message that you rejected the invitation. You can also press the End key to reject the invitation and end the voice call.

To mute the video on your device, select **Options > Mute**.

To play the video at the original volume, select **Options > Original volume**. This does not affect the audio playback of the other party of the phone call.

To end the sharing session, select **Stop**. To end the voice call, press the **End**. When you end the call, video sharing also ends.



## About Contacts

Select the **Contacts** dedicated key.

With Contacts, you can save and update contact information, including phone numbers, home addresses, and email addresses. You can add a personal ringtone or thumbnail image to a contact. You can also create contact groups, which allow you to communicate with several contacts at the same time. You can also send contact information to compatible phones.

## Working with contacts

### Making a call from Contacts


1. Press the **Contacts** key to access your contacts.
2. Locate the required contact by scrolling to the desired name, or enter the first letters or characters of the name to narrow the search.
3. Scroll to the required number, select the call type, then press the **Call** or **Middle Select** key.

### Searching for a contact

To find a contact stored on your Vertu phone:

1. Press the **Contacts** key.
2. Enter the first letter of the name of the contact you want to find in the **Type to search** field. The list of contacts is filtered to display only the matching contacts.
3. Enter more letters of the contact's name if needed. Select a contact to view contact information.



**NOTE:** Contacts saved to the SIM card have the SIM  icon displayed alongside.

## Creating a new contact

To create and save a new contact to your Vertu phone:

1. Press the **Contacts** key to access your contacts.
2. Select **Options > New contact**.
3. Enter the contact information of the new contact in the panels that appear.
4. Select **Done** when you have finished and the information is saved.

You can save contacts to your SIM card as well as your phone memory by copying contacts from your phone to your SIM card. This is useful when you want to put your SIM card into another phone.



**TIP:** You can also save a new contact from the **Home screen**. To do this:

1. Enter a number, select **Options > Save to contacts**, then select **Create new** or **Update existing** as required.
2. Select the number type.
3. Enter a name for the contact, then select **Done** to save it.



**TIP:** If someone whose phone number is not stored in Contacts calls you, you can create a contact for that person. To do this:

1. Scroll to the desired number in **Log** (in **Missed calls** or **Received calls**), then select **Options > Save to contacts** and **Create new** or **Update existing**. For information on the call history, see **Log > Recent calls**.
2. Enter a name for the contact, then select **Done** to save it.

## Send Contact information

The business card feature allows you to send and receive contact information through text messages, email, and Bluetooth.

### Sending a business card

To send a business card in a multimedia message:

1. On the **Home screen**, press the **Contacts** key.
2. Scroll to the desired contact, then press the Middle Select key.
3. Select **Options > Send business card**.





4. Select the relevant option from the **Via message**, **Via email**, **Via Bluetooth**, or **Upload** list.
5. If the contact details include more than one phone number and a ring tone, select **Selected detail only** to send only the default phone number or select **All contact data** to send all of the contact information.
6. Add a recipient to the message, then select **Options** > **Send**. A confirmation message is displayed when the business card has been sent. Follow on-screen instructions to send the information using the selected method, especially if **Upload** is selected.



**NOTE:** If the contact information includes an image and/or ringtone, the image and/or ringtone can only be sent in a business card as a multimedia message, **Via email**, or **Via Bluetooth**.

### Receiving a business card

When you receive a business card, a notification is displayed on the home page.

To save a received business card:

1. Open the message from the Notification area or from **Messages** > **Inbox** to view the business card.
2. Select **Options** > **Save business card**, then press the Middle Select key. A confirmation message is displayed when you save the information to **Contacts**.

To discard a received business card without saving it:

1. If you want to view the business card before discarding it, select **Options** > **Open** then **Options** > **Delete**.
2. The business card is deleted. A confirmation message is displayed.

### Editing a contact

You can edit contacts at any time, changing any information you like. For instance, add or remove phone numbers and images.

### Adding an image to a contact

When you add an image to a contact, it is displayed when you call the contact or the contact calls you.

To add an image to a contact:

1. Press the **Contacts** key to access your contacts.
2. Scroll to the required contact, then press the Middle Select key to open the contact.

3. Select **Options** > **Add image** (if there is already an image attached, you have the option to **View**, **Change**, or **Remove** the image).
4. The **Select image:** dialog appears, which allows you to choose an image from the **Gallery**.
5. Scroll through the list of images that appears, then press **Select** when the appropriate image is in focus; this is then attached to the contact.
6. Press **Back** to exit and save.

### Personalize the ringtone

When you add a ringtone to a contact, it plays when the contact calls you.

To personalize the ringtone for a contact:

1. Press the **Contacts** key to access your contacts.
2. Scroll to the required contact, then press the Middle Select key to open the contact.
3. Select **Options** > **Ringtone**.  
Either select one of the existing ringtones from the list that is displayed.  
or  
Press **Download sounds**, and access the Ovi site, or press **Options** and **Go to a New Web page** of your choice to locate a ring tone.



**TIP:** For information on accessing ringtones in the Gallery, see “Sound clips” on page 100 in the **Gallery**.

### Saving multiple phone numbers for a contact

You can save a more than one phone number for a contact. These can be any combination of any of the phone types listed and can include more than one phone number of the same type.

To add a phone number to a contact:

1. Press the **Contacts** key to access your contacts.
2. Scroll to the required contact, then select **Options** > **Edit**.
3. Select **Options** > **Add detail**, then choose the type of number you want to add from the scrollable list.



4. Enter the number, then select **Done** to save the new number.



**TIP:** To change the number type:

1. Press the **Contacts** key to access your contacts.
2. Scroll to the required contact, then select **Options > Edit**.
3. Scroll to the required number.
4. Select **Options > Edit label**, then type the label you want for that number. The label is free text, but the number category, such as Mobile or Email, does not change.

## Default phone number

The first number saved for a contact is automatically set as the default phone number. When you call or send a message to a contact without specifying which phone number to use, this default number is used.

## Adding information to a contact

You can save other information for a contact, such as postal address, birthday, and email addresses, to your Vertu phone.

To add information to a contact:

1. Press the **Contacts** key to access your contacts.
2. Scroll to the required contact, then select **Options > Edit**.
3. Select **Options > Add detail**, then select the type of information you want to add.
4. Enter the information, then select **Done**. The contact information is directly saved.

## Deleting a contact

To delete a single contact:

1. Press the **Contacts** key to access your contacts.
2. Scroll to the required contact, then select **Options > Delete**.
3. Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

To delete multiple contacts:

1. Press the **Contacts** key to access your contacts.
2. From the **Options** menu, select **Mark/Unmark**.
3. Either select **Mark** to flag individual contacts or select **Mark all** to select all contacts within a group.

4. Then select **Options > Delete**. A warning message displays showing the items selected for deletion.  
Or  
If you are deleting marked items from a Group, select **Options > Remove from group**.
5. Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

## Contact groups



The Contact Groups feature allows you to easily manage and use contacts by assigning them to groups.

You can assign a ringtone to a group. For example, if you create a group for work colleagues and assign a specific ringtone to that group, you can quickly and easily recognize when you are being called by a work colleague.

You can also send messages to a group instead of adding contacts as message recipients one by one.

## Create and save a new group

To create and save a new group:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Select **Options > Group > New group**.
3. Enter a name for the group.
4. If required, add the conference service number, ID and PIN for that group, as follows:  
**Conf. service number** — Enter the conference call service number.  
**Conf. service ID** — Enter the conference call ID.  
**Conf. service PIN** — Enter the conference call PIN code.
5. Select a ringtone for the group, if required, then select **Save**. The list of groups is displayed after a confirmation message.




## Adding contacts to a group



**NOTE:** You must save a group before you can add contacts to it.

To add a contact to a group:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Scroll to the group. Groups are denoted by the **Group**  icon.
3. Select **Options** > **Group** > **Add members**.
4. Scroll through the list of contacts. Select the contact(s) to add to the group using the Middle Select key to mark contacts.
5. Press **OK** to add the selected members to the **Group**. Contacts are copied over from the main list, so all contacts remain displayed in the full list. Contacts can belong to more than one group.
6. Add more contacts to the group, as desired.

## Adding a ringtone to a group

1. Select the group you want to work with, then select **Options** > **Group** > **Ringtone**.
2. Choose an existing ringtone to assign to the group, or download a ringtone.
3. Press **Select** to assign the ringtone and exit.

## Viewing and editing group details

To view and edit the details of a group:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Scroll to the desired group, then select **Options** > **Group** > **Edit group**.
3. Change the details of the group, as desired, then select **Done** to save.

## Viewing details of group members

To view the details of group members:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Scroll to the desired group, then select **Options** > **Open**.
3. To view the details of a group member, scroll to the member, then select **Options** > **Open**.

## Deleting a group

To delete a group:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Scroll to the desired group, then select **Options** > **Group** > **Delete group**.
3. Press the **Middle Select** key to delete the group, then press **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

## Removing contacts from a group

To remove a contact from a group:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Scroll to the group, then select **Options** > **Open** to open the group.
3. Scroll to the contact, then select **Options** > **Group** > **Remove member**.
4. Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion or **No** to abort the process.

## Copy and Duplicate (Manage) Contacts

Contacts can be stored in various locations on your Vertu phone. You can store them on your SIM card or back them up to the phone's mass storage or removable memory card.

Contacts can be copied and duplicated. Copying copies them to the phone memory, while Duplicating creates a copy of the contact in the same location, ready for you to insert a new name.

The **Backup** function allows you to copy individual, selected, or all contacts to selected locations.

Copying contacts and creating backups is done at the contact level.

When a single contact is opened for editing, it is possible to **Copy**, **Cut**, and **Paste** specific text and numbers between both contacts and other applications on your Vertu phone.

## Managing contacts

To copy single contacts:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Select **Options** > **Manage** > **Copy** to copy the contact to another location. If the contact is in the SIM card, you are offered the option to save to the phone memory, while if the contact is located on the phone memory, you can save the contact to the SIM card.  
or  
Select **Options** > **Manage** > **Duplicate**, a copy of the contact is created ready for you to save it with a new name.

To copy multiple contacts:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Select **Options**, then select **Mark/Unmark** > **Mark** to select the contact in focus.
3. Repeat step 2 for all relevant contacts.
4. Select **Manage** > **Copy**, then press **OK** to copy all the marked contacts to the memory or SIM card, as appropriate.

# Contacts



## Create backups

To backup single contacts:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Select **Options**, select **Create backup > Phone to memory card** or **Memory card to phone**.  
In this way, you can move a contact to the required location.
3. Select E: Mass storage or F: Memory card (if present), and the contact is copied to the selected location.

To back up multiple contacts:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Select **Options**, then select **Mark/Unmark > Mark** to select the contact in focus.
3. Repeat step 2 for all relevant contacts.
4. Select **Create backup > Phone to memory card**, then press the **Middle Select** key.
5. Select the destination memory location so that all the marked contacts are copied to that location.

## Contacts memory

Contacts can be stored to your Vertu phone (E: Mass storage or F: Memory card, if present) and SIM card.

### SIM card memory

Contacts stored to the SIM card only have a single name and phone number. Contacts stored on a USIM card can have a name, three phone numbers and an email address.

The number of contacts that can be stored on the SIM/USIM card and the number of characters supported is determined by your service provider.

If you move the SIM card to another phone, your SIM contacts are moved as well.

## Selecting the memory to use

To select the memory to be used by Contacts:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Select **Options > Settings > Contacts**.
3. Select **Default saving memory**.
4. Select either Phone Memory or SIM:
  - **Phone** - New contacts will be stored on the phone.
  - **SIM card** - New contacts will be stored on the SIM card.
5. Repeat the process until step 2, then select **Contacts to display**. The options are **Phone memory**, **SIM memory**, and **Service numbers**. Select which of these you want to display in your contacts.  
A confirmation message is displayed.



**NOTE:** The memory capacity of the SIM card is determined by your service provider.

## Service numbers

The Service Numbers feature allows you to view and call phone numbers, such as Help lines, special service numbers, and so forth, which your service provider has stored on the SIM card.



**NOTE:** You can only view and call service numbers if this functionality is supported by your service provider.



**NOTE:** You cannot edit or delete service numbers.

To view and call service numbers:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Select Service Numbers. The list of services is displayed.
3. To call a service number, scroll to the desired service, then press the **Send** key or select **Call**.




## Contacts settings

To set up **Contacts**:

1. Access **Contacts**.
2. Select **Options > Settings > Contacts** and the following options shown in the table below appear.
3. Set up each option as desired. The options available may vary.

<b>Contacts to display</b>	Select the contacts you want displayed in the Contact list. Options include <b>Phone memory</b> , <b>SIM memory</b> , and <b>Service numbers</b> . Each option is separately selectable.
<b>Default saving memory</b>	Select whether to save new numbers to the phone; the options are Memory or SIM Card Memory.
<b>Name display</b>	Change the way contact names are displayed. This setting is not available for all languages.
<b>Remote search server</b>	Change the remote contacts database. This option is available only if remote contacts databases are supported by your service provider. Options are <b>None</b> , <b>Mail for Exchange</b> , and <b>Intellisync</b> .
<b>Default contact list</b>	Select which contacts list opens when you open the Contacts application. This setting is only available when there is more than one contacts list.

Contacts saved to the SIM card have the SIM  graphic alongside.

## Search for contacts in a remote database

This only works if your email service provider supports this function.

1. To activate remote contact search, select **Options > Settings > Contacts > Remote search server**. You must define a remote server before you can perform remote contact searches.
2. To search for contacts in a remote database, select **Contacts > Options > Search from remote**.
3. Enter the name of the contact you want to search for, then select **Search**. The phone establishes a data connection to the remote database.
4. To search for contacts on the home screen, start entering characters on the home screen, then select the database from the proposed matches.
5. To change the remote contacts database, select **Options > Settings > Contacts > Remote search server**. This setting affects the database used in the Contacts and Calendar applications and the home screen, but not the database used for email.



Your Vertu phone contains a comprehensive messaging function, which enables you to send and receive a wide variety of message types. Message types that can be handled by your phone include:

- Text messages (short message service (SMS) messages)
- Multimedia messages (multimedia messaging service (MMS))
- Emails
- Speech messages
- Presentations (messages including slide shows or video)
- Service messages
- Cell broadcast messages



**NOTE:** The various types of messages are only available when supported by your service provider.

To begin using the feature, you need to check the following:

- Insert a valid SIM card into the device and make sure you are in the vicinity of a cellular network.
- Verify that the network supports the messaging features you want to use and that they are activated on your SIM card.
- Set the Internet access point settings on the device.
- Define the email account settings on the device (see “Setting up your phone for the first time” on page 22 and “Email settings” on page 68).
- Enter the text message settings on the device.
- Enter the multimedia message settings on the device.

Your Vertu phone normally recognizes the SIM card provider and automatically configures some of the message settings during the wizard setup process. If not, you may need to enter the settings manually or contact your service provider to configure them.

**Messaging** is accessed using the **Left Select** key on your Vertu phone.



**NOTE:** Email messages can also be accessed through **Messaging**.

## Message alerts

Text messages are automatically received when your Vertu phone is switched on. When your phone is off, messages are held by your service provider until the next time your phone is connected to the network.

When a message arrives on your phone, alerts are displayed on the **Home screen**. The presence of a new text message is displayed in the Notification area.

When email arrives in one of the email accounts displayed on the **Home screen**, a red icon next to the email account name displays the total number of new messages. If the email account is not displayed in the Information area, then an alert is displayed at the bottom of the Notification area.

Messages can be accessed directly by highlighting the relevant alert box and pressing the **Middle Select** key, which takes you to the relevant message function. For further information, refer to the “Home screen” on page 24.















## Messaging folders

The messaging function contains the following folders:

	<b>New message</b>	Access to create a new message in a selected format.
	<b>Inbox</b>	Messages and files received through Bluetooth are stored in the <b>Inbox</b> folder.
	<b>My folders</b>	User-defined folder structure for storing messages.
	<b>E-mail account</b>	Access to the email accounts you set up. Email messages are stored in mailbox folders.
	<b>Drafts</b>	Messages that have not yet been sent can be saved in the <b>Drafts</b> folder.
	<b>Sent</b>	Messages that have been sent, excluding Bluetooth messages, are stored in the <b>Sent</b> folder.
	<b>Outbox</b>	If messages cannot be sent, they are stored in the <b>Outbox</b> for later transmission.
	<b>Reports</b>	Reports from message providers are automatically saved to this area.



**TIP:** You can move between the **Inbox**, **My folders**, **Drafts**, **Sent**, and **Outbox** using the scroll button to navigate through the tabbed panels.



**TIP:** Messages are placed in the **Outbox** folder when, for example, your device is outside network coverage.



**NOTE:** The Message Sent icon or text on your device screen does not indicate that the message has been received at the intended destination.

To request the network to send you delivery reports for text and multimedia messages you sent:

1. Select **Options > Settings > Text message** (or **Multimedia message**) > **Receive report**, then select **Yes** or the relevant option.
2. The reports are then saved to the **Reports** folder.

## Organize messages

Using **My folders**, you can create a folder structure for storing your messages in a logical order.

Select **Messaging > My folders**.

- To create a new folder to organize your messages, select **Options > New folder**.
- To rename a folder, select **Options > Rename folder**. You can only rename folders you have created.
- To move a message to another folder, highlight the message, select **Options > Move to folder**, then select **OK**.
- To sort messages in a specific order, select **Options > Sort by**, then select the appropriate option.
- To view the message properties, highlight the message and select **Options > Message details**.

## Text messages

Text messaging, also known as the short message service (SMS), allows you to exchange messages containing only text with other phones.

When you send a text message, your Vertu phone uses a profile that defines how the phone handles interaction with your service provider. In most cases, the profile will be set using information on the SIM card.

For most service providers, you will not need to modify these settings, as the necessary information is obtained from your SIM card automatically. Depending on your SIM card, you may be able to store more than one set of message profiles.

For information on setting up your text messages, refer to:

**Messaging > Settings > Text message > Message centers**. Select your service provider, and open the panel to view the message center number.



**IMPORTANT:** Exercise caution when opening messages. Messages may contain malicious software or otherwise be harmful to your device or PC.

## Opening a text message

1. Select **Menu > Messaging > Inbox**.
2. Scroll to the relevant message, then press the Middle Select key to open it.





# Messages

## Replying to a message

With the message open:

1. Press the **Middle Select key > Reply > Via message**.
2. Enter your reply.
3. Select **Options > Send**.

## Sending a text message

1. Select **Messaging > New message > Message**.
2. Press the **Middle Select** key and select the recipient. You can select multiple recipients, or, if a recipient has more than one number, you will be asked to select which number to send the message to.
3. In the message field, type in your message.
4. Select **Options > Send**.



**TIP:** You can also send an email to the contact if an email address is listed.

## Forwarding a text message

To forward a text message:

1. From an open text message, select **Options > Forward**.
2. Press the **Middle Select** key and add recipients.
3. If required, edit the message text.
4. Select **Options > Send**.

## Calling the sender of a message

To call the sender of a message:

In an open message, press the **Call** key.

## Editing a message and copying text

You can edit a received message before forwarding or saving it.

To edit a message:

1. Open the message, edit the text, and add recipients.
2. To copy or paste text, select **Options > Editing options**, then select **Copy** or **Paste**.
3. To insert data, select **Options > Insert content** to add images, videos, text, and so forth.
4. **Close** the message when you have finished.

## Multimedia messages

Only devices that have compatible features can receive and display multimedia messages. The appearance of a message may vary depending on the receiving device.

A multimedia message (MMS) can contain text and objects such as images, sound clips, and video clips. Before you can send or receive multimedia messages on your phone, you must define the multimedia message settings. Your phone may recognize the SIM card provider and configure the correct multimedia message settings automatically. If not, contact your service provider for the correct settings, request the settings from your service provider in a configuration message, or use the Settings wizard application.

The wireless network may limit the size of MMS messages.

If the inserted picture exceeds this limit, the device may make it smaller so that it can be sent by MMS.

Check the size limit of email messages with your service provider. If you attempt to send an email message that exceeds the size limit of the email server, the message is left in the Outbox folder, and the device attempts to resend it periodically. Sending an email requires a data connection, and continuous attempts to resend the email may increase your data transfer costs. In the Outbox folder, you can delete such messages or move them to the Drafts folder.

## Creating a multimedia message

1. Select **New message**, press the **Middle Select** key, then select the relevant option. Select **Message** to send a text or multimedia message (MMS), **Audio message** to send a multimedia message that includes one sound clip, or **Email** to send an email message.
2. Enter the recipient, then write the message.
3. To add a media file to a multimedia message, select **Options > Insert content**. Highlight the relevant icon to define the file type or source you require, then locate the desired file.  
You can add existing media or capture new images or video for inclusion in the message, for example, **Options > Insert content > Insert image > New**.
4. Select the **Insert other** icon to insert a business card, slide, note, or other file.
5. To send the message, select **Options > Send**, or press the **Call** key.



**NOTE:** The Message Sent icon or text on your device screen does not indicate that the message has been received at the intended destination.

Your device supports text messages longer than the limit for a single message. Longer messages are sent as two or more messages. Your service provider may charge accordingly.

Characters with accents, other marks, or some language options take more space and limit the number of characters that can be sent in a single message.

You may not be able to send video clips that are saved in MP4 file format or that exceed the size limit of the wireless network in a multimedia message.

## Receive and reply to multimedia messages



**IMPORTANT:** Exercise caution when opening messages. Messages may contain malicious software or otherwise be harmful to your device or PC.



**TIP:** If you receive multimedia messages that contain objects unsupported by your device, you cannot open them. Try to send these objects to another device, such as a computer, and open them there.

1. To reply to a multimedia message, open the message, then select **Options > Reply**.
2. Select **To Sender** to reply to the sender, **To All** to reply to everyone included in the received message, **Via audio message** to reply with an audio message, or **Via email** to reply with an email message. Email messaging is available only if a mailbox is configured and the message is sent from an email address.
3. Enter the text of the message, then select **Options > Send**.

## Emails

Emails can be worked on in either the **Messaging** or **Email** functions.

For detailed information about working with emails and setting up email accounts, refer to the Email chapter. This chapter only provides brief information about using email.

## Reading an email message



**IMPORTANT:** Exercise caution when opening messages. Messages may contain malicious software or otherwise be harmful to your device or PC.

1. Select the **Messaging** key.
2. Scroll to the relevant email account, then press the Middle Select key to open it.
3. The email **Inbox** is displayed. Scroll to the relevant message, then press the Middle Select key to open it.
4. To open other folders, such as **Drafts**, scroll up to the **Inbox** header, then open the drop down-field and make a selection.
5. To change the order of your emails, scroll to the **Date** header, then select the required ordering method.

- To reply to the message sender, select **Options > Reply**.
- To reply to the sender and all other recipients, select **Options > Reply to all**.
- To forward the message, select **Options > Forward**.
- To add an attachment to the email message, select **Options > Add attachment**.
- To remove the selected attachment, select **Options > Remove attachment**.
- To delete an email message, select the message and **Options > Actions > Delete**.

## Create and send an email

1. Select the **Messaging** key.
2. Either select **Messaging**, select email account, then **Options > Create email**.  
Or  
Select **Messaging > New message > Email** and then select the email account.
3. Enter the recipient's email address in the To field. Press the **Middle Select** key to open **Contacts** and locate the recipient's email address.
4. Complete the email.
5. Select **Options > Send**.



# Messages

## Speech messages and Message Reader

With Message Reader, you can listen to text, multimedia, audio, and email messages.

- To listen to new messages or email, on the **Home screen**, press and hold the **Left Select** key until **Msg. Reader** opens.
- To listen to a message from your **Inbox**, scroll to the message, then select **Options > Listen**.
- To listen to an email message from your mailbox, scroll to the message, then select **Options > Listen**.
- To stop the reading, press the **End** key.
- To pause and continue the reading, press the scroll key.
- To skip to the next message, scroll right.
- To replay the current message or email, scroll left.
- To skip to the previous message, scroll left at the beginning of the message.
- To view the current message or email in text format without the sound, select **Options > View**.

## Presentations

Select the **Messaging** key.

Creating multimedia presentations is not possible if MMS creation mode is set to Restricted.

To change the setting, select **Options > Settings > Multimedia message > MMS creation mode > Free** or **Guided**.

## Creating a presentation message

1. Create the message as described for "Creating a multimedia message" on page 58.
2. Select **Options > Insert content**, then choose the **Insert presentation** icon. Select the template type to set which media objects you can include in the presentation, where they appear, and which effects are displayed between images and slides.
3. To insert images, sound or video clips, or notes into your presentation, scroll to the corresponding object area, then select **Options > Insert**. Options include Image, New Image, and Sound Clip. Select **New slide** to add another image.
4. Scroll to the text area, then enter the text.
  - To choose the presentation's background color and background images for different slides, select **Options > Background settings**.
  - To set effects between images or slides, select **Options > Effect settings**.

- To preview the presentation, select **Options > Preview**.  
Multimedia presentations may only be viewed in compatible phones that support presentations. They may appear different depending on the phone used.

## View presentations

- To view a presentation, open the multimedia message in the Inbox folder. Scroll to the presentation, then press the **Middle Select** key to play the presentation.
- To pause the presentation, press the **Left Select** or **Right Select** key.
- To resume the presentation, select **Options > Continue**.

## View and save multimedia attachments

- To view multimedia messages as complete presentations, open the message, then select **Options > Play presentation**.



**TIP:** To view or play a multimedia object in a multimedia message, select **View image**, **Play sound clip**, or **Play video clip**.

- To view the name and size of an attachment, select the message and **Options > Objects**.
- To save a multimedia object, select **Options > Objects**, the object, and **Options > Save**.

## Service messages

Select the **Messaging** key.

You can receive special messages that contain data, such as operator logos, ringtones, bookmarks, and Internet access or email account settings.

Service messages are sent to your phone by service providers. Service messages may contain notifications such as news headlines, services, and links through which the message content can be downloaded.

- To define the service message settings, select **Messaging** and **Options > Settings > Service message**.
- To download the service or message content, select **Messaging > Options > Message details**.
- To save the contents of these messages, select **Options > Save**
- To view information about the sender, Web address, expiration date, and other details of the message before downloading it, select **Messaging > Options > Message details**.



## Send service commands

You can send a service request message (also known as a USSD command) to your service provider and request activation of certain network services. Contact your service provider for the service request text.

To send a service request message, select **Messaging > Options > Service commands**. Enter the service request text, then select **Options > Send**.

## Cell broadcast

Select **Messaging** and **Options > Cell broadcast**.

With the cell broadcast network service, you can receive messages from your service provider on various topics, such as weather or traffic conditions in a particular region.

For available topics and relevant topic numbers, contact your service provider. Cell broadcast messages cannot be received when the device is in remote SIM mode. A packet data (GPRS) connection may prevent cell broadcast reception.

Cell broadcast messages cannot be received in UMTS (3G) networks.

- To receive cell broadcast messages, you may need to turn cell broadcast reception on. Select **Options > Settings > Cell broadcast > Reception > On**.
- To view messages related to a topic, select the topic.
- To receive messages related to a topic, select **Options > Subscribe**.



**TIP:** You can set important topics as “hot topics”. You are notified on the home screen, when you receive a message related to a hot topic. Select a topic and **Options > Hotmark**.

- To add, edit, or delete topics, select **Options > Topic**.

## Text messages on the SIM card

Text messages may be stored on your SIM card. Before you can view SIM messages, you must copy the messages to a folder in the device. After copying the messages to a folder, you can view them in the folder or delete them from the SIM card.

1. Select **Messaging** and **Options > SIM messages**.
2. Select **Options > Mark/Unmark > Mark** or **Mark all** to mark every message.
3. Select **Options > Copy**.
4. Select a folder and **OK** to begin copying.

To view SIM card messages, open the folder where you copied the messages, then open a message.

## Messaging settings

Select **Messaging** and **Options > Settings**.

Open the message type in question, then define all fields marked with Must Be Defined or a red asterisk.

Your device may recognize the SIM card provider and automatically configure the correct text message, multimedia message, and GPRS settings. If not, contact your service provider for the correct settings, request the settings from your service provider in a configuration message, or use the Settings wizard application.

# Messages



## Text message settings

Select **Messaging** and **Options > Settings > Text message**.

Select from the following:

<b>Message centers</b>	View the available message centers for your device, or add a new one.
<b>Message center in use</b>	Select a message center to send the message.
<b>Character coding</b>	When available, select reduced support to use automatic character conversion into another encoding system.
<b>Receive report</b>	Select Yes if you want the network to send you delivery reports on your messages (network service).
<b>Message validity</b>	Select how long the message center resends your message if the first attempt fails (network service). If the recipient cannot be reached within the validity period, the message is deleted from the message center.
<b>Message sent as</b>	Convert the message into another format, for example, fax or email. Change this option only if you are sure that your message center is able to convert text messages into these other formats. For more information, contact your service provider.
<b>Preferred connection</b>	Select the preferred method of connection when sending text messages from your device.
<b>Reply via same center</b>	Select whether you want the reply message to be sent using the same text message center number (network service).

## Multimedia message settings

Select **Messaging** and **Options > Settings > Multimedia message**.

Select from the following:

<b>Image size</b>	Sets the image size used in your multimedia image; options are large and small.
<b>MMS creation mode</b>	Select <b>Restricted</b> to set your phone to prevent including content in multimedia messages that may not be supported by the network or the receiving device. To receive warnings about including such content, select <b>Guided</b> . To create a multimedia message with no restrictions on attachment type, select <b>Free</b> . If you select <b>Restricted</b> , creating multimedia presentations is not possible.

<b>Access point in use</b>	Select the default access point to connect to the multimedia message center. You may not be able to change the default access point if it is preset in your device by your service provider.
<b>Multimedia retrieval</b>	Select how you want to receive messages, if available. Select <b>Always automatic</b> to always receive multimedia messages automatically, <b>Auto in home netw.</b> to receive notification of a new multimedia message that you can retrieve from the message center (for example, when you are traveling abroad and are outside your home network), <b>Manual</b> to manually retrieve multimedia messages from the message center, or <b>Off</b> to prevent receipt of any multimedia messages. Automatic retrieval may not be supported in all regions.
<b>Allow anonymous msgs.</b>	Receive messages from unknown senders.
<b>Receive adverts</b>	Receive messages defined as advertisements.
<b>Receive reports</b>	Request for delivery and read reports of sent messages (network service). It may not be possible to receive a delivery report of a multimedia message sent to an email address.
<b>Deny report sending</b>	Select Yes to not send delivery reports from your device for received multimedia messages.
<b>Message validity</b>	Select how long the messaging center tries to send the message (network service). If the recipient of a message cannot be reached within the validity period, the message is removed from the multimedia messaging center. Maximum time is the maximum amount of time allowed by the network.

The device requires network support to indicate that a sent message has been received or read. Depending on the network and other circumstances, this information may not always be reliable.

## Email settings

All information about setting up and managing your email accounts is provided in the chapter on email.



## Speech settings

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Phone > Speech**.

With Speech, you can set the language, voice, and voice properties for Message Reader.



**TIP:** When you download a new language, you must download at least one voice for that language.

<b>Language</b>	Sets the <b>Language</b> for Message Reader. To download additional languages to your device, select <b>Options &gt; Download languages</b> .
<b>Voice</b>	Sets the speaking <b>Voice</b> . The voice depends on the selected language.
<b>Speed</b>	Sets the speaking rate
<b>Volume</b>	Sets the speaking volume

- To view voice details, open **Speech** and reselect the second **Speech** tab. Select the voice you want to listen to. Select **Options > Voice details**. To listen to a voice, select the voice and **Options > Play voice**.
- To delete languages or voices, select the item and **Options > Delete**.

## Message Reader settings

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Phone > Speech**, then scroll right to display the **Settings** tab.

To change Message Reader settings, define the following:

<b>Language detection</b>	Activate automatic reading language detection.
<b>Continuous reading</b>	Activate continuous reading of all selected messages.
<b>Speech prompts</b>	Set Message Reader to insert prompts into messages.
<b>Audio source</b>	Listen to messages through the earpiece or loudspeaker.

## Service message settings

Select **Messaging and Options > Settings > Service message**.

- To allow your device to receive service messages from your service provider, select **Service messages > On**.
- To select how to download services and service message content, select **Message details > Automatically** or **Manually**. If you select **Automatically**, you may still need to confirm some downloads since not all services can be downloaded automatically.

## Cell broadcast settings

Select **Messaging and Options > Settings > Cell broadcast**.

- To receive cell broadcast messages, select **Reception > On**.
- To select the languages in which you want to receive cell broadcast messages, select **Language**.
- To display new topics in the cell broadcast topics list, select **Topic detection > On**.

## Other settings

Select **Messaging and Options > Settings > Other**.

Select from the following:

<b>Save sent messages</b>	Select whether to save sent messages in the Sent folder.
<b>Number of saved msgs.</b>	Enter the number of sent messages to save. When the limit is reached, the oldest message is deleted.
<b>Memory in use</b>	Select where to save your messages. You can save messages to the memory card only if a memory card is inserted.
<b>Folder view</b>	Select whether you want to see folder information on one or two lines.





Constellation Quest provides you with easy access to multiple email accounts. Email accounts can run under the Mail for Exchange, IMAP, and POP3 protocols.

Use Mail for Exchange for a corporate email account using Microsoft Exchange Server. You can set the Mail for Exchange account to synchronize your calendar, contacts, and tasks automatically. If you do this, your email, calendar, contacts, and tasks on the phone will be synchronized with the Microsoft Exchange Server.

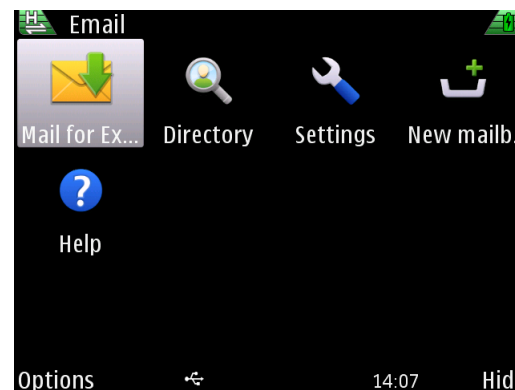
Note that you can only synchronize with one server; therefore, you can only use Mail for Exchange if you do not want to synchronize your Vertu.Me calendar, contacts, and tasks.

Other email accounts can be set up in the Email function, and they will be automatically configured to use the correct protocol.

## Setting up your email accounts

The email wizard is the preferred method of email account setup. It appears as part of the startup wizard when the phone is first initialized for use. Email accounts are set up as follows:

- If no email account is set up on initiation, the **Set up email** message appears in the Information area of your **Home screen**. This is the easiest way to access the wizard.
- Alternatively, if one or more email accounts have already been set up, press the **Email** key and the **Email** panel appears. Select **New mailb.** and the email wizard appears.



If pressing the **Email** key results in the inbox of your mailbox being displayed, press **Back**, then press the **Email** key once again to display the **Email** panel shown above.



**TIP:** Technical Support can set up your email if you prefer or if you are having problems. To do this, just call Technical Support using the Concierge key.

## Running the email wizard

1. When the email wizard displays, select **Start**.
2. You are asked, Do you want to set up a corporate Mail for Exchange account? Select **Yes** to set up your corporate account if it uses Microsoft Exchange Server. Select **No** if you are setting up your Vertu.Me, Hotmail, Yahoo, Google, or any other email account.
3. When setting up your **Mail for Exchange** account, enter information when requested. You need your account name, password, user name, and domain details.
4. When setting up accounts such as Vertu.Me, Hotmail, Yahoo, Google, or any other listed service, select the relevant service from the list displayed, then enter your user name and password. Press **Accept** if a terms and conditions panel appears. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up your email account. The process ends when your mailbox is displayed.







5. For any other email account, choose the **Other** option in the list, then enter your user name and password. Press **Accept** if a terms and conditions panel appears. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up your email account. The process ends when your email box is displayed.

The first email account you set up is displayed in place of the **Set up email** message displayed on the **Home screen**. When you set up a second email account, this is placed in the second slot of the Information area. Only two accounts can be displayed on the **Home screen**.

The parameters for your Microsoft Exchange Server should be available from your corporate IT department, or, alternatively, call Technical Support for assistance.

Your email account types are identified by icons. Generic email accounts are identified with the  standard email icon, your Vertu.Me account is identified with the  Vertu.Me email icon, while accounts such as Hotmail, Google and Yahoo are identified with their specific icons.



**NOTE:** If no SIM is present, the phone will try to connect through the WLAN, if previously set up.

## Lotus Notes Traveler

Vertu users can connect to their corporate email accounts via IBM® Lotus Notes® Traveler. Lotus Notes Traveler provides two-way, over-the-air synchronization of information between mobile devices and corporate email accounts via Lotus Notes even while offline.

This allows users to access email (including attachments) and personal information management (PIM) applications, such as calendar, contacts, appointments, and to-do lists.

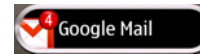
Scheduled synchronization and data filtering can be used to optimize phone usage. Lotus Notes Traveler uses a secure socket layer (SSL) connection for encrypting data via an HTTPS protocol.

## Accessing your emails

All your email accounts, including your **Mail for Exchange** account, can be accessed in a number of ways:

- Highlight and select the relevant email account displayed on the **Home screen**.
- On the **Home screen**, press the **Left Select** key to run the **Messaging** application and select the relevant email account in the **Messaging** panel.
- Press the **Email** key, then select the relevant email account.

The email link on the **Home screen** shows the number of unread emails in a red circle in the inbox for that email service. This increments to a maximum of 99.



Refer to the “Home screen” on page 24 for an explanation of the **Home screen**.

## Reading an email message



**IMPORTANT:** Exercise caution when opening messages. Messages may contain malicious software or otherwise be harmful to your device or PC.

1. Open the email account as described above.
2. Scroll to a message, then press the Middle Select key to open and read it.
3. To open other folders, such as **Drafts**, scroll up to the **Inbox** header, then open the drop down-field and make a selection.



**TIP:** Press T to take you to the top of the list or B to take you to the bottom. Left scroll takes you to the header section, which displays the date from anywhere in the list.

4. To change the order of your emails, scroll to the **Date** header, then select the required ordering method for your emails.





# Email

## Replying to and forwarding an email

1. To reply to a message, highlight it, then select **Options > Reply**.
2. To reply to a message and include all the original recipients, highlight it, then select **Options > Reply to all**.
3. To forward the message, select **Options > Forward**.

## Creating and sending an email

1. From either **Messaging** or **Email**, open the relevant email account, then select **Options > Create email**.
2. In the To field, enter the recipient's email address or press the Middle Select key to open **Contacts**, then select the contacts you want to send the email to. If you are adding several recipients, insert a semicolon (;) between their email addresses. Use the Cc field to send a copy to other recipients, or the Bcc field to send a blind copy to recipients. If the Bcc field is not visible, select **Options > More > Show Bcc field**.
3. Complete the subject, and enter your message into the text area.
4. Select **Options**, then choose from the following:

<b>Priority</b>	Set the priority of the message.
<b>Add attachment</b>	Add an attachment to the message.
<b>Flag</b>	Flag the message for follow-up.
<b>Insert template</b>	Insert text from a template.
<b>Add recipient</b>	Add recipients to the message from <b>Contacts</b> .
<b>Input options</b>	Activate or deactivate predictive text input, or select the writing language.
<b>Editing options</b>	Cut, copy, or paste the selected text.
<b>More</b>	Hide or Show Cc and Bcc fields

5. Select **Options > Send**.

## Add attachments

Open the email account you want.

- To add an attachment to the email message, select **Options > Add attachment**
- To remove the selected attachment, select **Options > Remove attachment**.

## Download attachments

1. To view the attachments in a received email message, scroll to the attachment field, then select **Options > Actions**. If there is one attachment in the message, select Open to open the attachment. If there are several attachments, select View List to see a list showing which attachments have been downloaded.
2. To download the selected attachment or all the attachments in the list to your device, select **Options > Actions > Download** or **Download all**. The attachments are not saved to your device and are deleted when you delete the message.
3. To save the selected attachment or all the downloaded attachments to your device, select **Options > Actions > Save** or **Save all**.
4. To open the selected, downloaded attachment, select **Options > Actions > Open**.

## Reply to a meeting request

1. Open the appropriate email account.
2. Select a received meeting request then **Options**. Now choose from the following:

<b>Accept</b>	Accept the meeting request.
<b>Decline</b>	Decline the meeting request.
<b>Forward</b>	Forward the meeting request to another recipient.
<b>Remove from Calendar</b>	Remove a cancelled meeting from your calendar.

## Search for email messages

1. Open the relevant email mailbox.
2. To search for items within the recipients, subjects, and body texts of the email messages in the mailbox, select **Options > Search**.
3. To stop the search, select **Options > Stop search**.
4. To start a new search, select **Options > New search**.

## Delete emails

1. Open the email account you want.
2. To delete an email message, select the message and **Options > Actions > Delete**. The message is placed in the Deleted Items folder, if available. If there is no Deleted Items folder available, the message is deleted permanently.
3. To empty the Deleted Items folder, select the folder and **Options > Empty Deleted Items**.



## Switch between email folders

1. Open the appropriate email account.
2. To open another email folder, place the focus on the **Inbox** at the top of the display. Press the Middle Select key to display the list of email folders.
3. Use the scroll keys to select the relevant folder, then press the Middle Select key to open that folder.

You can also use this method to switch between email accounts.

## Disconnect from the mailbox

1. Open the appropriate mailbox.
2. To cancel synchronization between the device and email server, and to work with email without a wireless connection, select **Options > Disconnect**. If your mailbox does not have the Disconnect option, select **Options > Exit** to disconnect from the mailbox.
3. To restart the synchronization, select **Options > Connect**.

## Set an out-of-office reply

This option is not available with all mailbox providers.

1. Open the appropriate mailbox.
2. Select **Options > Settings > Mailbox settings**.
3. The options presented depend on the mailbox type. Typically select either Mailbox > Out of office > On or Mailbox Settings > Out of office > Off, but these settings depend on your mailbox provider.
4. To enter the text for the reply, select Out of Office Reply.

## Synchronizing email messages

Synchronize email messages between your phone and the email server as follows.

1. Press the **Email** key, then highlight the email account you want, but do not open it.
2. Select **Options > Synchronize all**.
3. To cancel the synchronization process, select **Options > Cancel synchronization**.
4. To stop the synchronization and work with email without a network connection, select **Options > Disconnect all**.
5. To reopen the network connection, select **Options > Connect all**.

## Email account preferences

### Setting up your Email key

This option allows you to select which mailbox to open with the **Email** key when you access it with a long press.

1. **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Email key settings**.
2. Choose an email account or select the Default setting to use the one you have previously set as your default email.

### Setting up business and personal accounts

To set up your business and personal accounts, go to **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Modes > Current mode**. Select either **Business** or **Personal**.

### Setting up your primary and secondary email accounts

Note that you can select different email accounts for your **Business** and **Personal** settings.

1. To set up your primary and secondary email accounts, go to **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Modes** and set up **Email notifications**.
2. When **Mailbox** appears, select the **Primary** tab.
3. Select the mailbox you want to designate as your primary account. This may be your Vertu.Me account.
4. Scroll to select the **Secondary** tab, then select the mailbox you want for your secondary email.
5. Press **OK** to save and exit.

### Setting up your default mailbox

To set the default mailbox for your Vertu phone:

1. Select **Messaging > Options > Settings > Email > Default mailbox**.
2. Highlight the mailbox you want, then press Middle Select key to activate it.
3. Press **Back** to save and exit.

# Email



## Setting up Lotus Notes Traveler

Follow the instructions provided in the configuration wizard. You must enter your user ID, password, server name, and access point information, which may be your WLAN.

You may have to update the Advanced Settings, which allow you to select the sync protocol and port numbers to use and the servlet the phone accesses.

The View Log option provides details on the communication between devices.

Once set up, Lotus Notes Traveler provides you with a mailbox that is synchronized with your Lotus Notes corporate email account; it is used in a similar way to the other email accounts.

## Email settings

Access Email settings as follows:

**Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Email.**

The following options become available:

- Global settings for your email accounts.
- Settings for individual email accounts
- Personal information management (PIM)

It is also possible to access email settings using the pathways below, but some functions are accessed in alternative ways.

- **Messaging** key, then select **Options > Settings > Email** and the relevant email account.
- **Email** key, select the relevant account, then select **Options > Settings** and choose one of the available options.

Note that in certain circumstances, **Global settings** only appear when you select **Back** from within the **Mailbox settings** for an account.

## Global Settings

<b>Message list layout</b>	Select whether the email messages in the inbox display one or two lines of text.
<b>Body text preview</b>	Preview messages when scrolling through the list of email messages in the inbox.
<b>Title dividers</b>	To expand and collapse the list of email messages, select On.
<b>Download notifications</b>	Set the device to display a notification when an email attachment has been downloaded.
<b>Warn before delete</b>	Set the device to display a warning before you delete an email message.
<b>Home screen</b>	Set how many lines of email are displayed in the home screen information area.

## Email accounts

For each email account, the following settings are displayed: **Mailbox**, **What to sync**, and **When to sync**:

To access the email accounts:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Email**.
2. Highlight the mailbox account you want, then open it with the Middle Select key.

The options available vary, depending on the type of email accounts that have been set up. If no email accounts have been configured, few options are displayed.

Options include:

- **Global settings**
- **Mailbox settings**
- **Account settings**
- **What to sync**
- **When to sync**



## Generic Mailbox Settings

Highlight the relevant mailbox account, then select it with the Middle Select key. The settings for that mailbox are displayed.

Displays details of the mailbox settings, including mailbox name, user name, password, and domain.



**NOTE:** Note that the options available vary according to email provider.

### Mailbox

<b>My email address</b>	Displays the full email address of the account.
<b>Reply-to address</b>	Optional reply address.
<b>Mailbox name</b>	Name of the email account, such as Hotmail or Google.
<b>Mailbox type</b>	Options are POP3 or IMAP4.
<b>My name</b>	Enter the name you want displayed when you send an email.
<b>User name</b>	Account user name.
<b>Password</b>	Account password.
<b>Server name</b>	Defined by the email provider.
<b>Use signature</b>	Options are On or Off. Email Signature allows you to place a line of text automatically at the end of every email, such as your name.
<b>Signature line</b>	Enter the line of text that you want to enter for your signature.
<b>Advanced mailb. settings</b>	Options presented vary with the email provider. They can be Port and Secure connection, or Incoming email settings and Outgoing email settings, as displayed in the table below.

### Incoming email settings

<b>User name</b>	Displays the full email address of the account.
<b>Password</b>	Account password.
<b>Incoming mail server</b>	Select the type of server that hosts your email server. This can be POP3 or IMAP4. Normally set automatically.
<b>Access point in use</b>	The access point can be defined if you are not using the preferred access point. Options are Always Ask or User Defined.
<b>Security</b>	Select the required type of security, if any. Options are On (StartTLS), On (SSL/TLS), or Off.

<b>Port</b>	Enter the number of the port to use for connecting to the incoming email server. Options are Default Setting or User Defined.
<b>APOP secure login</b>	APOP is an extension to POP3 and uses secure mechanisms to transfer user names and passwords during the login transaction. Options are On or Off. This must be supported by the email service provider.

### Outgoing email settings

<b>User authentication</b>	Options are None, <b>Same as for incoming</b> or <b>User authentication</b> .
<b>User name</b>	The user name assigned to you by your email service provider.
<b>Password</b>	Enter and verify your login password.
<b>Outgoing mail server</b>	Name of the outgoing SMTP email server.
<b>Access point in use</b>	Always ask or user defined
<b>Security</b>	Options are <b>On (SSL/TLS)</b> , <b>On (StartTLS)</b> , or <b>Off</b> .
<b>Port</b>	Default or user defined

### Generic mailbox: What to Sync

<b>Retrieve</b>	Options are <b>Only headers</b> , <b>Less than (kb)</b> (which you can define), and <b>Body text and attach</b> .
<b>Emails to retrieve</b>	Options are <b>All</b> or <b>Number of emails</b> (which you can define).

### Generic mailbox: When to Sync

<b>What to sync</b>	Options are <b>Yes</b> and <b>No</b> . Old emails can be removed after a user-defined time limit using the <b>Remove mail older than</b> command.
<b>When to sync</b>	Set up the <b>Connection days</b> , <b>Connection hours</b> , <b>Update interval</b> , and <b>Retrieve when abroad</b> . Select <b>Only in home network</b> to avoid roaming charges.

# Email



## Account information

Some accounts display account information related to that mailbox.

<b>User name</b>	The user name assigned to you by your email service provider.
<b>Password</b>	Password for your email account
<b>Server name</b>	Name of the SMTP email server
<b>Phone number</b>	Any associated phone number
<b>Access point</b>	Normally set by your service provider

## PIM settings

Personal information settings, or PIM management, are used to set up synchronization settings for Calendar, Contacts, and To-do lists.

**Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Email > Applications.**

Select Calendar

<b>Calendar sync</b>	Options are <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b>
<b>Remove entr. older than</b>	Old items can be removed after a specified time limit.
<b>Initial sync</b>	The options are <b>Delete items on phone</b> and <b>Keep items on phone</b> .

Select Contacts

<b>Calendar sync</b>	Options are <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b>
<b>Initial sync</b>	The options are <b>Delete items on phone</b> and <b>Keep items on phone</b> .

Select To-do

<b>To-do sync</b>	Options are <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b>
<b>Initial sync</b>	The options are <b>Delete items on phone</b> and <b>Keep items on phone</b> .
<b>Sync completed to-dos</b>	The options are <b>Yes</b> and <b>No</b> .

Select If Conflict

<b>If conflict</b>	The options are <b>Server wins</b> and <b>Device wins</b> .
--------------------	---

## Nokia Messaging

Nokia Messaging automatically pushes email from your existing email address to your Vertu phone, which allows you to read, respond to, and organize your emails on the go.

This messaging service works with a number of popular Internet email providers, such as Google email services.

Nokia Messaging must be supported by your network and may not be available in all regions. The Nokia Messaging application is preinstalled on your Vertu phone.

It can run the service on your device even if you have installed other email applications that do not use Nokia Messaging.



**NOTE:** It is possible to decline the Nokia Messaging service and then set up your email account in the regular way using the IMAP/POP3 services used by your email provider.





Vertu provides a number of exclusive services to enhance the user experience with your Vertu phone. These include **Vertu Select**, **City Brief**, **Vertu Concierge**, **Technical support**, Remote Assist, and Download.

Select **Menu > Vertu**.



### Vertu Concierge



**Vertu Concierge** is a dedicated and independent lifestyle assistance service available globally 24/7 in your preferred language. Your Vertu Constellation Quest comes with 12 months complimentary access to this service, once you have registered the product. Your experience will begin with a personalized call designed to introduce you to the service, understand your needs, and capture your preferences. This ensures your relationship with Vertu Concierge is a rich and rewarding one, meeting your needs and delivering unique opportunities.

To contact **Vertu Concierge**:

Press the **Vertu Concierge** key (key 2) on the left side of your phone (screen facing you), select **Vertu Concierge**, then select **Voice call** or **Send email**.

If you are unable to contact **Vertu Concierge** using the **Concierge** key, call +44 870 737 5535.



### Vertu Technical Support



Should you require technical help with using your Vertu phone, simply call or email Vertu **Technical support** using the **Concierge** key and select Support. If you are unable to contact **Technical support** using the **Concierge** key, call +44 125 286 7500. Visit the website [www.vertu.com](http://www.vertu.com) for local numbers.

Vertu **Technical support** is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

### Vertu Remote Assist



On a single-use basis and provided Vertu has your consent, this utility enables Vertu's Technical Support team to remotely access your phone. It is used to assist you with any problems setting up or using your phone. Please contact Technical Support before trying to use this service.



# Vertu Services

## Vertu Select



**Vertu Select** delivers original articles selected to inspire, inform, and entertain, based on your region, preferences, and passions. Written by selected experts and organizations, **Vertu Select** appears on your Vertu Constellation Quest in the media feeds on the **Home screen** following registration of the product. The content is often linked to exclusive offers accessed through Concierge.

## City Brief



Vertu **City Brief** is an independently written series of destination guides. Each guide is automatically presented to you on your Vertu Constellation Quest when you are in that location. **City Brief** provides helpful advice and suggestions on where to eat, drink, and visit during your stay.

The link appears on the **Home screen**. To access **City Brief**, highlight the area on the **Home screen**, then press the Middle Select key; **City Brief** opens in the Web browser.

**City Brief** is updated regularly so you can always be confident the information is accurate and relevant. New destinations are added on a regular basis.

## Vertu Downloads



Vertu Downloads allows access to downloadable content carefully selected by Vertu to be appropriate for Constellation Quest customers.

## Registration

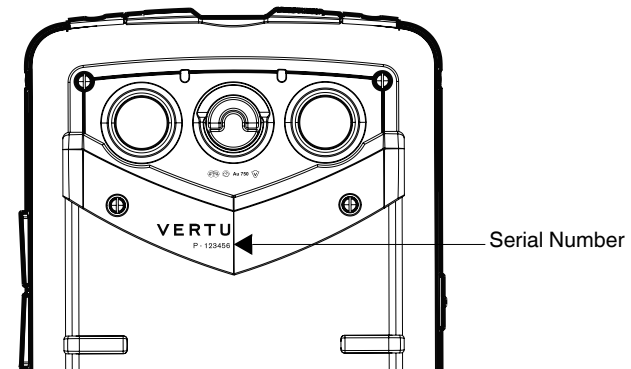


When your Vertu phone is switched on for the first time, you are taken through a few simple steps to set up your phone. Prior to setup, you must insert a valid SIM card into your Constellation Quest and be in a location with cellular data connectivity.

You will first be asked to accept the terms and conditions. This will automatically enable the phone to use the core features of your Constellation Quest.

You will then be asked to register the product, which is essential for enabling the extensive free services offered on your Constellation Quest. If you are already a registered customer, you must enter your user name and password. If not, registration is quick, as all you have to do is enter a few details. To complete the registration, you must enter the serial number of your Constellation Quest, which is found on the battery cover at the back of the phone.

If you do not register your phone at initial setup, you can do so later by selecting Registration in the Vertu menu.





The **Calendar** feature works like an electronic diary. It allows you to keep track of your appointments, meetings, and other events, such as birthdays. You can also create **To-do** lists.

In **Month view**, all calendar entries are marked with a triangle. The **Anniversary** entries are marked with a triangle and an exclamation point. The entries of the selected day are displayed in a list.

## Clock

Appointments for the next 12 hours are displayed on the analog **Clock**, their durations displayed around the bevel of the clock (See “Clock” on page 25.).

## Calendar

By default, **Calendar** appears in **Month view**. **Calendar** can appear in **Week view**, **Day view**, or **Agenda view** or by **To-do** list. You can change the display at any time. The default view is selected in **Calendar Settings**. The procedures described below assume that the default, **Month view**, is enabled.

## Opening Calendar

1. To open **Calendar**, press the dedicated **Calendar** key  
Or select **Menu > Calendar**.
2. Move around the calendar and select the relevant date with the Middle Select key. Calendar then opens to display the **Day view**, by hour.
3. Whenever you see the triangle icon, scroll across the icon to view the event on the right. To close the list, scroll away from the icon.

## Calendar entries

You can create the following types of **Calendar** entries:

- **Meeting** entries remind you of events that have a specific date and time.
- **Meeting request** are invitations that you can send to participants. Before you create a **Meeting request** you must have a compatible mailbox configured on your phone.

- **Memo** entries are related to the whole day but not to a specific time of day.
- **Anniversary** entries remind you of birthdays and special dates. They refer to a certain day but not a specific time of day. **Anniversary** entries are repeated every year.
- **To-do** entries remind you of a task that has a due date but not a specific time of day. A priority can be attached to a **To-do** entry.

## Calendar views

**Calendar** views display the following information:

- **Month view** shows the current month and calendar entries of the selected day in a list.
- **Week view** shows the events for the selected week in seven day boxes.
- **Day view** shows the events for the selected day grouped into time slots according to their starting times.
- **To-do** view shows all to-do items.
- **Agenda view** shows the events for the selected day in a list.

To change the view:

Select **Options > Change View** and the desired view.



**TIP:** You can quickly move between views using the shortcut keys: **Month view (M)**, **Week view (W)**, **Day view (D)**, **Agenda view (A)**, and **To-do view (T)**.

## Go to a date

**Go to date** takes you directly to the chosen date.

1. Press the **Calendar** key.
2. Select **Options > Go to date**.
3. Enter the required date into the panel, then press **OK**. **Calendar** reappears with the selected date highlighted in the default display format.

To move to the next or previous day in **Month view**, **Week view**, **Day view**, and **Agenda view**, select the desired day using the scroll keys.



## Creating a meeting entry

To create a reminder for an event at a specific time:

1. Press the **Calendar** key, then choose a date.
2. Press **Options** > **New entry** then **Meeting (N)**. A new meeting panel appears.
3. Alternatively, with **Calendar** open at the **Day view**, scroll to the time when you want the meeting to take place, then press the Middle Select key, when a yellow line displays with the 🕒 icon. Use the Up and Down scroll keys to select the duration of the meeting, then press the **Middle Select** key again. A **New meeting** panel appears.
4. Overtyping the **(Enter subject)** field with a suitable description.
5. Enter the start and end times and dates, or select the **All day event** option.
6. Enter the **Location**.
7. Select an **Alarm time** for the event, if desired. The alarm can be set to one of a number of fixed time intervals before the meeting, (ranging from a number of days to 0 minutes), or the alarm can be turned off.  
If an **All day event** is selected, the first option offered is to turn the alarm **On** or **Off**. If **On** is selected, you can select a time and date for the alarm. The system defaults to 12 pm of the previous day.
8. For a recurring meeting, set the recurrence time (**Daily**, **Weekly**, **Biweekly**, **Monthly**, OR **Yearly**). Enter the **Repeat until** date.
9. By default, the priority is set to **Public**, but **Private** or **None** can be selected using the left or right scroll key.

Priority defines how the entry is handled during synchronization. Select **Private** to hide the entry from viewers if the calendar is available online. Select **Public** to make the entry visible to viewers, or select **None**, in which case the entry is not copied to your computer.

10. Enter a meeting description, if desired.
11. Press **Done** to save the entry, or select **Options** > **Save**, and a confirmation message is displayed.



**TIP:** You can quickly create a new **Meeting** entry by pressing the N key when the **Calendar** is displayed.

## Creating a meeting request

To create a new **Calendar** meeting request and invite other participants:

1. Press the **Calendar** key and choose a date.
2. Press **Options** > **New entry** then **Meeting request**.
3. If you have a number of email accounts, select the relevant email account when prompted.
4. A **New meeting** panel appears. Under the **(Required)** heading, press the **Middle Select** key when the list of possible contacts appears. Scroll through the list and select individual contacts using the Middle Select key to select individuals. When the selection is complete, press **OK** to enter the names. Alternatively, to add names from your contacts list, enter the first few characters, then select from the proposed matches. To add optional participants, select **Options** > **Add optional participants**.
5. Complete the remainder of the panel as described for “Creating a meeting entry” on page 74.
6. Press **Done** to save the entry if you are not ready to send the meeting request.
7. Select **Options** > **Send**, which sends the meeting to a compatible device by message, email, or **Bluetooth**.

## Creating a new Calendar memo

To create a new **Calendar** memo:

1. Press the **Calendar** key and choose a date.
2. Press **Options** > **New entry** then **Memo**.
3. A **New memo** panel appears. Enter the subject of the memo, then scroll down to enter the memo details, if desired. The date of the selected day is displayed, which you can change.
4. Set the priority as described for “Creating a meeting entry” on page 74.
5. Press **Done** to save the entry.
6. Select **Options** and **Save**, **Delete**, **Send**, or **Edit** an existing entry. **Send** enables you to send the **Memo** to a compatible device via a message, email, or **Bluetooth**.  
Printing options are set up from the **Options** menu.



## Creating an anniversary entry

To create a reminder for an event at a specific time:

1. Press the **Calendar** key and choose a date.
2. Press **Options > New entry** then **Anniversary**.  
A New Anniversary panel appears.
3. Overtyping the **Enter occasion** field with a suitable description.
4. Change or accept the selected date.
5. You can set an early warning reminder for the event. If the alarm is set to **Off**, no alarm or reminder options are displayed.
6. Select the reminder time and date options for the event, if desired.
7. Set the priority as described for “Creating a meeting entry” on page 74.
8. Enter a description of the **Anniversary**, if desired.
9. Press **Done** to save the entry, or select **Options > Save**, and a confirmation message is displayed.

## Creating a to-do entry

To create a **To-do** entry at a specific time:

1. Press the **Calendar** key and choose a date.
2. Press **Options > New entry** then **To-do**.  
A new **To-do** panel appears.
3. Overtyping the **Enter subject** field with a suitable description.
4. Change or accept the selected date.
5. You can set an early warning reminder for the event. If the alarm is set to **Off**, no alarm or date reminder options are displayed.
6. The **To-do** list can be prioritized. Options are **Low**, **Normal**, or **High**.
7. Select the reminder time and date options for the event, if desired.
8. Set the priority as described for “Creating a meeting entry” (above).
9. Enter a description of the **To-do** reminder, if desired.
10. Press **Done** to save the entry, or select **Options > Save**, and a confirmation message is displayed.

## Edit a Calendar item

To edit an existing **Calendar** item:

1. Press the **Calendar** key.
2. Scroll to the relevant date where the triangle appears, then press the Middle Select key to select that day. Scroll to the relevant item entry and highlight it, then press the **Middle Select** key to open the item.
3. Press **Options > Edit** to make the **Memo** available for editing.
4. Scroll through the item, making changes as necessary.
5. To save the changes, press **Done** or **Options > Save**.

## Moving a Calendar item

This procedure describes how to move a **Calendar** item by changing the date.

To move a Calendar item:

1. Open the relevant item as described above for editing a Calendar item.
2. Press **Options > Edit** to make the **Memo** available for editing.
3. Change the date using the scroll keys and keyboard to make changes.
4. To save the changes, press **Options > Save**.

## Copying a Calendar item

This describes how to copy a Calendar item to another location. Note that not all elements of an item can be copied (such as the date):

1. Open the relevant item as described (see “Edit a Calendar item” on page 75).
2. Press **Options > Edit** to make the item available for editing.
3. Place the cursor in the relevant location where the **Copy** will start, then select **Options > Editing options > Copy**. Press the **Left Select** key that displays **Start**. Press **Start**, then use the scroll keys to highlight the text you want to copy. Now press the **Left Select** key that displays **Copy**. A message appears stating **Text copied to clipboard**.
4. Navigate to another item where you want to place the text you copied, then place the cursor in the correct location.
5. Follow steps 1 to 3 as described above, then select **Paste** and the text is pasted to that location.
6. Press **Options > Save** to save the changes. A confirmation message is displayed.



## Deleting a Calendar item

1. Press the **Calendar** key.
2. Scroll to the relevant date where the triangle appears, then press the Middle Select key to select that day. Scroll to the relevant item entry and highlight it, then press the **Middle Select** key to open the item.
3. Press **Options > Entry**, and a **Delete entry?** message appears. Select **Yes** to delete the item.

The options presented vary according to context. Options presented include **Delete** an individual entry and the **Before date** option which enables you to delete everything before a user-defined date, which must be in the past. If the item is a recurring meeting, you are offered the option to **Delete this occurrence**, or to **Delete the series**.

## Sending Calendar items

You can send Calendar items in the following ways:

- In the body of a text message or multimedia message. The message type depends on the details of the Calendar note.
- As an attachment to a multimedia message.
- As a Calendar note.
- Via Bluetooth.

To send a Calendar item in a text message:

1. Press the **Calendar** key.
2. Scroll to the date of the event, then press the **Middle Select** key to display the events for the day.
3. Scroll to the event and highlight it.
4. Select **Options > Send**, then select **Via message**.
5. Press the **Select key**.
6. Add a recipient or recipient group to the message, then select **Send**. A confirmation message is displayed when the Calendar note has been sent.

For further information on messages, refer to “Messages” on page 56.

To send a Calendar item as an attachment to an email message:

1. Press the **Calendar** key.
2. Scroll to the date of the event, then press the Middle Select key to display the events for the day.

3. Scroll to the event and highlight it.
4. Select **Options > Send**, then select **Via email**. Select an email account, if prompted.
5. Press the Middle Select key, and your email account opens. The Calendar entry is attached automatically to the email.
6. Scroll to the **To** list, then press the Middle Select key when the email contacts list appears. Highlight a recipient, then press **OK**. Add additional recipients to the message, if desired.
7. Select **Options > Send**. A confirmation message is displayed when the message has been sent or, if the phone is offline, the message has been placed in the **Outbox**.

To send a Calendar item using **Via Bluetooth**:

1. Press the **Calendar** key.
2. Scroll to the date of the event, then press the Middle Select key to display the events for the day.
3. Scroll to the event and highlight it.
4. Select **Options > Send**, then select **Via Bluetooth**.
5. Your Vertu phone will search for nearby Bluetooth devices and display them in a list. (Alternatively, the phone displays the message **Activate Bluetooth in offline mode?** Select **Yes** to continue.
6. Select the device to which you want to send the Calendar memo. Your Vertu phone connects to the device and sends the memo. A confirmation message is displayed when the note has been sent.

For further information on Bluetooth, refer to “Bluetooth connectivity” on page 87.

## Receiving Calendar items

When you receive a Calendar item, a notification is displayed.

To save a Calendar memo you received:

1. Open the received message, which displays the details of the memo.
2. Select **Options** using the Left Select key.
3. Select **Save to Calendar** to save the item.
4. The confirmation message “**Calendar entry saved**” is displayed.

To discard a received Calendar item without saving it:

1. Open the received message, which displays the details of the memo.
2. Select **Options** using the Left Select key.
3. Select **Delete** to delete the memo.



## Calendar settings

The Calendar **Settings** menu allows you to set up **Calendar** to suit your preferences. You can set up the following:

- **Calendar alarm tone**
- **Alarm snooze time**
- **Default view**
- **Week starts on**
- **Title of week view**
- **Shortcuts**
- **Default mailbox**

**Calendar** will revert back to the configuration applied in the **Settings** menu.

### Calendar alarm tone

The Calendar alarm tone is played when an alarm is set for a Calendar meeting, event, or to-do list.

To set the Calendar alarm tone:

1. Press the **Calendar** key, then select **Options > Settings**.
2. Scroll to **Calendar alarm tone**, then press the Middle Select key to display the list.
3. Scroll through the list and select a tone.
4. Press the Middle Select key to save and close the function.
5. Press **Back** to exit.

### Alarm snooze time

You can set the alarm snooze time to any time from 1 minute to 60 minutes.

To set the alarm snooze time:

1. Press the **Calendar** key, then select **Options > Settings**.
2. Scroll to **Alarm snooze time**, then press the Middle Select key to display the setting.
3. Use the Left and Right scroll keys to set the value.
4. Press the Middle Select key to save and close the function.
5. Press **Back** to exit.

## Calendar views

The default Calendar view is the **Month view**. However, **Calendar** can also appear in **Week view**, **Day view**, **Agenda view**, and **To-do** formats.

### To set the Default view

1. Press the **Calendar** key, then select **Options > Settings**.
2. Scroll to **Default view**, then press the Middle Select key to display the list.
3. Scroll through the list and highlight a setting.
4. Press the Middle Select key to save and close the function.
5. Press **Back** to exit.

### First day of week

To set the first day of the week:

1. Press the **Calendar** key, then select **Options > Settings**.
2. Scroll to **Week starts on**, then press the Middle Select key to display the days of the week.
3. Use the Up and Down scroll keys to select the first day of the week.
4. Press the Middle Select key to save and close the function.
5. Press **Back** to exit.

### Title of week view

This is a toggle function that allows you to have the **Week number** or **Duration of week** as the title of the weekly view in Calendar.

1. Press the **Calendar** key, then select **Options > Settings**.
2. Scroll to **Title of week view**, then press the scroll keys to toggle between the two options.
3. Press the Middle Select key to save and close the function.
4. Press **Back** to exit.

### Shortcuts

This is a toggle function that enables or disables Calendar shortcuts:

1. Press the **Calendar** key, then select **Options > Settings**.
2. Scroll to **Shortcuts**, then press the Middle Select key to toggle **Shortcuts On** or **Off**.
3. Scroll away from the function, then press **Back** to exit.

# Calendar



## Default mailbox

This option only displays when at least one mailbox has been set up. It allows you to connect your Calendar to a particular email address.

1. Press the **Calendar** key, then select **Options > Settings**.
2. Scroll to **Default mailbox**, then press the Middle Select key to display the list of available mailboxes.
3. Use the Up and Down scroll keys to select the relevant email address.
4. Press the Middle Select key to save and close the function.
5. Press **Back** to exit.





Your Vertu phone is equipped with a digital camera you can use to take photos and record video clips. The camera can also capture panoramic views.

Photos are saved in JPEG (.jpg) format, and video clips are saved in 3GPP (.3gp) format.

## Opening Camera

1. Select **Menu > Media > Camera**

Or use the Right Select key which by default is set up to open the **Camera**, but note that this can be changed.

## Toolbar

The toolbar is displayed on the right side of the camera application. Once the camera function has been opened, press the Left Select key or Right Select key and the toolbar appears.

1. Use the Up or Down scroll bars to select an option, and the name of the selected option is displayed.
2. Select the option by pressing the Middle Select key.
3. The toolbar will close automatically after a few seconds.




The toolbar provides you with shortcuts to different items and settings before and after capturing an image or recording a video clip. The items displayed in the toolbar are context sensitive and can be customized by adding shortcuts of your choice to the toolbar.

To customize the camera toolbar, switch to image mode (for taking still images), then select **Options > Customize toolbar**.

You can include the following options in the toolbar:

Image	Shortcut name	Description
	<b>Add shortcut</b>	Lists the available shortcuts and adds the selected shortcuts to the toolbar.
	<b>Video mode</b>	Switches to video mode.
	<b>Scene modes</b>	Selects the scene mode in the toolbar. For still images, options include <b>Automatic</b> , <b>User Defined</b> , <b>Portrait</b> , <b>Landscape</b> , <b>Sport</b> , <b>Night</b> , and <b>Night portrait</b> . (see "Scene modes" on page 80 for more information on the user-defined scene modes.) For video, the only available options are <b>Automatic</b> or <b>Night</b> .
	<b>Panorama</b>	Switches to panorama mode.
	<b>Flash</b>	Selects the flash mode (images only).
	<b>Self-timer</b>	Switches to self-timer (images only), allowing you to set a time to take the photo.
	<b>Seq. mode</b>	Switches to sequence mode (images only), allowing you to select the number of photos you want to take in a single click.
	<b>Go to Photos</b>	Opens the destination where the photos are saved.

## To capture an image

1. On the **Home screen**, press the **Right Select** key to activate the camera.
2. The icon in the upper-left corner shows whether the camera is in image , panorama, or video  mode. Press the **Left Select** or **Right Select** key to display the toolbar. Select the image mode icon in the toolbar using the Up or Down scroll keys. Then select the  option with the **Middle Select** key.
3. Position your Vertu phone to take a portrait or landscape photo. The camera orientation automatically changes as you move the phone.
4. Aim the camera at the subject, then press the **Middle Select** key to capture the image.



## Camera




- To zoom in or out before capturing an image, use the Up or Down scroll keys or the **Volume** keys. A slider appears on the right side showing the extent of the zoom.

A preview of the photo is displayed. Press **Back** to return to the camera function, or work with the image, as described in “**Working with captured images and videos**” on page 82.








**TIP:** The number of photos that you can store on your Vertu phone with the current settings is shown at the top right of the screen when the toolbar is displayed.

### To capture a video clip


- On the **Home screen**, press the Right Select key to activate the camera.
- The icon in the upper-left corner shows whether the camera is in image  or video  mode. Press the Left Select or Right Select key to display the toolbar. Select the Video Mode icon in the toolbar using the Up or Down scroll keys. Then select the  option with the Middle Select key.
- Press and release the Middle Select key to start the recording. Use the **Left Select** or **Right Select** key (**Stop** or **Pause**) to control the recording. If **Pause** is selected, press the Right Select key to continue recording.
- To zoom in or out, use the Up/Down scroll keys, or the **Volume** keys. A slider appears on the right side showing the extent of the zoom.

The status bar at the top of the screen displays information about the recording, as displayed in the table below.

	The red dot indicates recording is in progress; flashing blue lines indicate that recording is paused.
0.54.10	Elapsed time for the current video clip.
	Graphical representation showing the elapsed time of the recording.
1.23.15	Remaining memory for video clip storage (in H:MM:SS) on the selected storage medium.
	Symbol displays the quality of the recording (small blocks = <b>High</b> ; larger blocks = <b>Normal</b> ).
	Format of the video recording, such as MP4.
	Icon indicates the selected storage medium for the video clip, such as phone or memory card.

View the video clip by pressing the **Play**  icon. Press **Back** to return to the camera function.








### Panorama mode

Select panorama mode from the **Options** menu or by pressing the **Panorama** icon  in the toolbar. **Panorama** applies only to still images. It allows you to select multiple images and automatically join them to create a panoramic view.

To take an image in panoramic view, press the Middle Select key to take the first image, then turn to the next position, as shown by the red rectangle on the screen, and the phone will automatically take the next image. Turn to subsequent positions, and the camera will take up to six images as it captures the panoramic view. The camera then joins the individual images into one panoramic view. Press **Cancel** or **Stop** if you want to end the process early.

### Scene modes


The options present for scene mode will differ when in image mode or video mode. A variety of image capture modes are available and optimized for specific conditions. Below is a list of options available in image mode.

Image	Mode	Description
	<b>Automatic</b>	All camera settings are adjusted automatically
	<b>User Defined</b>	Creates, edits, and saves your customized settings
	<b>Portrait</b>	Ideal to capture portrait images
	<b>Landscape</b>	Ideal to capture outdoor images
	<b>Sport</b>	Ideal to capture fast-moving images
	<b>Night</b>	Ideal to capture images in low light without flash
	<b>Night portrait</b>	Ideal to capture portraits in low light with flash

When the camera is in video mode, the options in scene mode are **Automatic** and **Night**.




## Flash setting

1. Highlight the flash icon  in the toolbar, then press the Middle Select key.
2. Select the relevant option, and the appropriate icon appears in the toolbar. Options include **Automatic**, **On**, **Reduce red eye**, and **Off**.
3. This option is retained until a change is made.

## Self-timer


To take a photo using the self-timer:

1. With Camera in image mode, select the **Self-timer** option  in the toolbar.
2. You get a list of options to choose from: **Off**, 2 seconds, 10 seconds, and 20 seconds. Select the relevant option and press **OK**.

When you are ready to take the photo, press **Activate**. An audible countdown starts and the image is captured.

## Sequence mode

This allows you to capture several images in a sequence, if enough memory is available.

Use the **Left Select** or **Right Select** key to display the toolbar, select the **Sequence mode**  from the options, then press the **Middle Select** key.

A number of options are available, ranging from a single shot to a user-determined sequence. The sequence setting captures six shots or, if the key is held down, shots are taken continuously until the memory available runs out.

Alternatively, select a specific time interval ranging from every 10 seconds to every 30 minutes to take images continuously until the memory runs out.

- Press **Cancel** to stop the capture process.
- The image is displayed along with a toolbar that appears on the right displaying a list of options you can use to work on the captured images.
- Select the **Options** button to delete the image, delete the sequence, or go to the Gallery where all the images are present.
- To deactivate sequence mode, select **Sequence mode > Single shot** in the toolbar.

## Camera setup

A number of parameters can be set for taking still images or video clips; they are determined from the context-sensitive **Options > Settings**. The settings vary for images and video.

## Image settings

To modify still image settings, select the image mode, select **Options > Settings** and from the following:

Settings	Description
<b>Image quality</b>	Set the image quality. The better the image quality, the more memory the image consumes. Displays the image size for each resolution.
<b>Add to Album</b>	Specify the album to which the recorded videos are saved.
<b>Show captured image</b>	To see the image after the capture, select <b>Yes</b> . To continue capturing images immediately, select <b>Off</b> .
<b>Default image name</b>	Specify the default name for the captured images.
<b>Extended digital zoom</b>	The <b>On</b> (continuous) option allows the zoom increments to be smooth and continuous between the digital and extended digital zoom. The <b>Off</b> option allows a limited amount of zoom while retaining the image resolution.
<b>Capture tone</b>	Set the tone that sounds when you capture an image.
<b>Memory in use</b>	Select where to store your images.
<b>Restore camera settings</b>	Restore the camera settings to the default values.



# Camera

## Video settings









To modify video image settings, with the video camera selected, select **Options > Settings** and from the following:

Settings	Description
<b>Video quality</b>	Set the quality of the video clip. Options are <b>High</b> , <b>Normal</b> , or <b>Sharing</b> . Select <b>Sharing</b> if you want to send the video clip in a multimedia message. The clip is recorded at OCIF resolution in 3GPP file format, and the size is limited to 300 KB (approximately 20 seconds). You may not be able to send video clips saved in the MPEG-4 file format in a multimedia message. The remaining recording time is displayed for the selected option.
<b>Audio recording</b>	Select <b>Mute</b> if you do not want to record sound. An icon appears on the screen when <b>Mute</b> is selected.
<b>Add to Album</b>	Specify the album to which the recorded videos are saved.
<b>Show captured video</b>	View the first frame of the recorded video clip after the recording stops. To view the entire video clip, select <b>Play</b> in the toolbar.
<b>Default video name</b>	Define the default name for recorded video clips.
<b>Memory in use</b>	Select where to store your video clips.
<b>Restore camera settings</b>	Restore the camera settings to the default values.

## Working with captured images and videos

The images and videos you capture are automatically saved in **Menu > Media > Gallery > Images**.

Once an image or video has been taken, the phone offers a choice of actions available in the context-sensitive toolbar. The available options vary for images and videos.

Image	Description
	<b>View</b> in portrait switches the image between <b>Portrait</b> and <b>Landscape</b> views
	<b>Play</b> the video clip
	<b>Send</b> image/video by message, Bluetooth, or upload to the <b>Outbox</b>
	<b>Sign in for Share Online</b> so that you can share images with your online friends
	<b>Go to Photos</b> takes you to that particular image/video
	<b>Add to Album</b>
	<b>Details</b> provides information about the image/video clip, including resolution, typically 2592 x 1944. Allows you to tag the image and add an image description
	<b>Delete</b> the image or video clip

There are particular options available in the options menu for images and videos. Pressing the **Left Select** key brings up a list of options:

For images:

<b>To printer or kiosk</b>	Select a printer or destination for the image
<b>Set as wallpaper</b>	Sets the image as the current wallpaper
<b>Assign to contact</b>	Links the image to a specific contact or contact group
<b>Rename image</b>	Rename with a meaningful filename



For videos:

<b>Set as ringtone</b>	Set the video clip as a ringtone for your <b>Profile</b> or a selection of your <b>Profiles</b> .
<b>Set as contact ringtone</b>	Set the video clip as the ringtone for a specific contact.
<b>Rename video clip</b>	Rename the video clip.

### Add shortcuts

This option enables you to add items to the Camera toolbar. To access **Add shortcut**, when in image mode, select **Options**, the **Customize toolbar**, then **Add shortcut**. Options are available to add **All shortcuts** and **Restore defaults**.

Image	Shortcuts	Description
	<b>Color tone</b>	Changes the color tone before capture.
	<b>Contrast</b>	Can be varied from <b>High</b> to <b>Low</b> using a slider. A preview is shown alongside.
	<b>Edit toolbar</b>	Manages the shortcuts on the toolbar.
	<b>Exposure</b>	Allows you to compensate for dark or light conditions using a slider, ranging from two stops overexposed to two stops underexposed.
	<b>Light sensitivity</b>	Sets the light for the image before capture. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Automatic</b></li> <li>• <b>Low</b></li> <li>• <b>Medium</b></li> <li>• <b>High</b></li> </ul>
	<b>Sharpness</b>	Sets the sharpness of the image to one of three levels: <b>Hard</b> , <b>Normal</b> , or <b>Soft</b> .
	<b>Viewfinder</b>	Sets the grid while capturing an image.

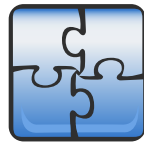
Image	Shortcuts	Description
	<b>Wh. balance</b>	Sets the white balance before capture to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Automatic</b></li> <li>• <b>Sunny</b></li> <li>• <b>Cloudy</b></li> <li>• <b>Incandescent</b></li> <li>• <b>Fluorescent</b></li> </ul>
	<b>Brightness</b>	Sets the brightness before capturing an image.

### To view images and videos

You can view images and videos using the Camera application and through the **Menu**. Through the camera:

1. Select the image or video mode in Camera.
2. Select the **Go to Photos** option in the toolbar. This opens the last captured image.
3. Using the **Right Select** key, select **Back**, which displays other images.
4. All the captured images are displayed along with the month it was captured, the albums present in the gallery, any tagged images, any downloaded images, and the images being shared online.

You can also view images and videos in the menu. To do this, select **Menu > Media > Gallery**.



Your Vertu phone can be connected to the Internet or another compatible device or PC in a number of ways, which are described in this section.

## Data connections and access points

Your Vertu phone supports packet data connections (network service), such as GPRS in the **GSM** network. When using your phone in **GSM** and **UMTS** networks, multiple data connections can be active at the same time, and access points can share a data connection. In the **UMTS** network, data connections remain active during voice calls.

You can also use a **WLAN** data connection. Only one connection in one wireless LAN can be active at a time, but several applications can use the same **Internet access point**.

To establish a data connection, an access point is required.

You can define different kinds of access points, including the following:

- **MMS** access point to send and receive multimedia messages
- **Internet access point** (IAP) to send and receive email and connect to the Internet

Check with your service provider for the type of access point you need for the service you want to access. For availability and subscription to packet data connection services, contact your service provider.

## Network settings

Your device can automatically switch between the **GSM** and **UMTS** networks.

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings** and **Phone > Network** and from the following:

<b>Network mode</b>	Select which network to use. If you select <b>Dual mode</b> , the device automatically uses the <b>GSM</b> or <b>UMTS</b> network, according to the network parameters and the roaming agreements between the wireless service providers. For details and roaming costs, contact your network service provider. This option is shown only if supported by the wireless service provider.  A roaming agreement is an agreement between two or more service providers to allow users of one service provider to use the services of other service providers.
<b>Operator selection</b>	Select <b>Automatic</b> to set the device to search for and select any of the available networks. Select <b>Manual</b> to manually select the network from a list of available networks. If the connection to the manually selected network is lost, the device sounds an error tone and asks you to reselect a network. The selected network must have a roaming agreement with your home cellular network.
<b>Cell info display</b>	Set the device to indicate when it is used in a cellular network based on microcellular network (MCN) technology and to activate cell info reception.



## Wireless LAN

Your device can detect and connect to wireless local area networks (**WLAN**). Using a **WLAN**, you can connect your device to the Internet and compatible devices that have **WLAN** support.

### About WLAN

To use a wireless LAN (**WLAN**) connection, it must be available in the location, and your device must be connected to the WLAN. Some **WLANs** are protected, and you need an access key from the service provider to connect to them.



**NOTE:** In France, you are only allowed to use **WLAN** indoors.

Features that use **WLAN** or that are allowed to run in the background while using other features increase the demand on battery power and reduce battery life.



**IMPORTANT:** Always enable one of the available encryption methods to increase the security of your wireless LAN connection. Using **Encryption** reduces the risk of unauthorized access to your data.

### WLAN connections

To use a wireless LAN (**WLAN**) connection, you must create an **Internet access point** (IAP) for **WLAN**. Use the access point for applications that need to connect to the Internet.

A **WLAN** connection is established when you create a data connection using a WLAN Internet access point. The active **WLAN** connection ends when you end the data connection.

You can use **WLAN** during a voice call or when packet data is active. You can only be connected to one **WLAN** access point device at a time, but several applications can use the same Internet access point.

When the device is in the offline profile, you can still use **WLAN** (if available). Remember to comply with any applicable safety requirements when establishing and using a **WLAN** connection.



**TIP:** To check the unique media access control (MAC) address that identifies your device, enter \*#62209526# on the home screen.

## WLAN wizard



Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Connectivity > WLAN wiz.**

The **WLAN** wizard helps you connect to a wireless LAN (**WLAN**) and manage your **WLAN** connections.

If the search finds WLANs, you can create an **Internet access point** (IAP) for a connection and start the Web browser using the IAP by selecting the connection and **Start Web browsing** from the **Options** menu.

If you select a secure **WLAN**, you are asked to enter the relevant password. To connect to a hidden network, you must enter the correct network name (service set identifier: SSID).

If you already have the Web browser running using the currently active **WLAN** connection, to return to the Web browser, select **Cont. Web browsing**. To end the active connection, select the connection and **Disconnect WLAN**.

### WLAN Internet access points

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Connectivity > WLAN wiz. and Options**.

Select from the following:

<b>Filter WLAN networks</b>	Filter out wireless LANs ( <b>WLAN</b> ) from the list of detected networks. The selected networks are not displayed the next time the application searches for <b>WLANs</b> .
<b>Details</b>	View the details of a network shown in the list. If you select an active connection, the connection details are displayed.

### Operating modes

There are two operating modes in **WLAN**: infrastructure and ad hoc.

The infrastructure operating mode allows two kinds of communication: wireless devices are connected to each other through a **WLAN** access point device, or wireless devices are connected to a wired LAN through a **WLAN** access point device.

In the ad hoc operating mode, devices can send and receive data directly between each other.



# Connectivity

## WLAN settings



Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > Connection > Wireless LAN.**

<b>Show WLAN availability</b>	To have an indicator displayed when there is a <b>Wireless LAN</b> (WLAN) available in your current location, select <b>Show WLAN availability &gt; Yes.</b>
<b>Scan for networks</b>	To select the interval for your device to scan for available WLANs and to update the indicator, select <b>Scan for networks.</b> This setting is not available unless you select <b>Show WLAN availability &gt; Yes.</b>
<b>Internet connectivity test</b>	To set the device to test the Internet capability of the selected WLAN automatically, to ask for permission every time, or to never perform the connectivity test, select <b>Internet connectivity test &gt; Run automatically, Ask every time, or Never run.</b> If you select <b>Run automatically</b> or allow the test to be performed when the device asks for permission, the access point is saved to Internet Destinations when the connectivity test is performed successfully.

To check the unique media access control (MAC) address that identifies your device, enter \*#62209526# on the home screen. The MAC address is displayed.

## Active data connections



Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Connectivity > Conn. mgr.**

Select **Active data connections.**

In the active data connections view, you can see the open data connections:

➡ Packet data connections

📶 **Wireless LAN** (WLAN) connections.



**NOTE:** The actual bill for calls and services from your service provider may vary, depending on network features, rounding off for billing, taxes, and so forth.

- To end a connection, select **Options > Disconnect.**
- To close all open connections, select **Options > Disconnect all.**
- To view the details of a connection, select **Options > Details.**

## Sync



Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Phone > Sync.**

**Sync.** allows you to synchronize your notes, calendar entries, text and multimedia messages, browser bookmarks, and contacts with various compatible applications on a compatible computer and over the Internet.

You may receive synchronization settings in a special message from your service provider.

A synchronization profile contains the necessary settings for synchronization.

When you open the **Sync.** application, the default or previously used sync profile is displayed. To modify the profile, scroll to a sync item, then select **Mark** to include it in the profile or **Unmark** to leave it out.

- To manage sync profiles, select **Options** and the desired option.
- To synchronize data, select **Options > Synchronize.** To cancel synchronization before it finishes, select **Cancel.**

Normally synchronization is with your PC using **Ovi Suite.**



Listed below are some typical settings for the **Sync.** process.

<b>Sync profile name</b>	This is a descriptive name for the profile, such as Ovi Suite.
<b>Server version</b>	Email protocol version that you can use with your server. You can only synchronize email with protocol version 1.2.
<b>Server ID</b>	Enter the server ID. This option is only available if you select 1.2 as the protocol version.
<b>Data bearer</b>	Select the connection type used to connect to the remote database during synchronization (such as Bluetooth).
<b>Host address</b>	Enter the Web address of the server that contains the database you want to synchronize your device with.
<b>User name</b>	Enter your user name to identify your device to the server.
<b>Password</b>	Enter your password to identify your device to the server.
<b>Allow sync requests</b>	To allow the remote server to start synchronizing automatically, select <b>Automatically accept</b> . To prevent automatic synchronization, select <b>Not allowed</b> . To have the server contact you for permission before starting synchronization, select <b>Ask first</b> .
<b>Network user name and Password</b>	If present, enter your HTTPS user name and password.
<b>Synchronization type</b>	Define the direction of the synchronization process.
<b>Contacts sync settings</b>	Edit the <b>Contacts</b> synchronization settings.
<b>Calendar sync settings</b>	Edit the <b>Calendar</b> synchronization settings (and other settings).

**Advanced settings** allow you to define the synchronization process when **Roaming** is operating.

The available options may vary.

### Viewing the synchronization log

The synchronization log stores statistics about the data that has been transferred when synchronizing your Vertu phone with a computer or server.

To view the synchronization log:

On the home screen, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Phone > Sync. > Options > View log**.

### Bluetooth connectivity



#### About Bluetooth connectivity

With Bluetooth connectivity, you can make a wireless connection to other compatible devices, such as cell phones, computers, headsets, and car kits.

You can use the connection to send images, video clips, music and sound clips, and notes, transfer files from your compatible PC, and print images with a compatible printer.

Since devices with Bluetooth wireless technology communicate using radio waves, they do not need to be in direct line of sight. However, they must be within 10 meters (33 feet) of each other, although the connection may be subject to interference from obstructions, such as walls, or other electronic devices.

This device is compliant with Bluetooth Specification 2.0 + EDR, supporting the following profiles: Advanced Audio Distribution, Audio Video Remote Control, Basic Imaging, Basic Printing, Dial-up Networking, File Transfer, Generic Access, Hands-free, Headset, Human Interface Device, Local Positioning, Object Push, Phone Book Access, SIM Access, Serial Port, and Video Distribution. To ensure interoperability between other devices supporting Bluetooth technology, use Vertu-approved accessories for this model. Check with the manufacturers of other devices to determine their compatibility with this device.

Features using Bluetooth technology increase the demand on battery power and reduce battery life.

When the device is locked, only connections to authorized devices are possible.

# Connectivity

## Bluetooth settings

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Connectivity > Bluetooth**.

When you open the application for the first time, you are asked to define a name for your device. You can change the name later.

Select from the following:

<b>Bluetooth</b>	Turn <b>Bluetooth</b> connectivity <b>On</b> or <b>Off</b> .
<b>My phone's visibility</b>	To allow your device to be found by other devices with <b>Bluetooth</b> wireless technology, select <b>Shown to all</b> . To set a time period after which the visibility is set from show to hide, select <b>Define period</b> . To hide your device from other devices, select <b>Hidden</b> .
<b>My phone's name</b>	Edit the name shown to other Bluetooth-enabled devices.
<b>Remote SIM</b>	Enable or disable another device, such as a compatible car kit accessory, to use the SIM card in your device to connect to the network.

## Security tips

When you are not using **Bluetooth** connectivity, you can control who can find your device and connect to it as follows:

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Connectivity > Bluetooth**, then choose **Bluetooth > Off** or select **My phone's visibility** and change to **Hidden**.

Operating the device in **Hidden** mode is a safer way to avoid malicious software. Do not accept Bluetooth connectivity from sources you do not trust. Alternatively, switch off the **Bluetooth** function. This does not affect other device functions.

Do not pair with or accept connection requests from an unknown device. This protects your device from harmful content.





## Send data using Bluetooth connectivity

Several **Bluetooth** connections can be active at the same time. For example, if you are connected to a compatible headset, you can also transfer files to another compatible device at the same time.

1. Open the application where the item you want to send is stored.
2. Scroll to an item, then select **Options > Send > Via Bluetooth**.

Devices using Bluetooth technology within range are displayed.

Device icons are as follows:

-  computer
-  phone
-  audio or video device
-  other device

To interrupt the search, select **Cancel**.

3. Select the device you want to connect to.
4. If the other device requires pairing before data can be transmitted, a tone sounds and you are asked to enter a pass code. The same pass code must be entered in both devices.

When the connection is established, **Sending data** is displayed.

## Pair devices


To pair with compatible devices and view your paired devices, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Connectivity > Bluetooth**. In the main view of **Bluetooth** connectivity, scroll right.

Before pairing, create your own pass code (1 to 16 digits), and agree with the owner of the other device to use the same code. Devices that do not have a user interface have a factory-set pass code. The pass code is used only once.

1. To pair with a device, select **Options > New paired device**. Devices that are in range are displayed.
2. Select the device, and enter the pass code. The same pass code must be entered on the other device as well.



3. Some audio enhancements connect automatically to your device after pairing. Otherwise, scroll to the enhancement, then select **Options > Connect to audio device**.



Paired devices are indicated by  in the device search.

4. To set a device as authorized or unauthorized, scroll to the device, then select from the following options:

<b>Set as authorized</b>	Connections between your device and the authorized device can be made without your knowledge. No separate acceptance or authorization is needed. Use this status for your own devices, such as your compatible headset or PC, or devices that belong to someone you trust. Indicates authorized devices in the Paired Devices view.
<b>Set as unauthorized</b>	Connection requests from this device must be accepted separately every time.

5. To cancel a pairing, scroll to the device, and select **Options > Delete**.  
If you want to cancel all pairings, select **Options > Delete all**.

## Receive data using Bluetooth connectivity

When you receive data through Bluetooth connectivity, a tone sounds and you are asked if you want to accept the message. If you accept, the  icon is displayed and the item is placed in the Inbox folder in Messaging. Messages received through Bluetooth connectivity are indicated by .



**TIP:** If your device notifies you that the memory is full when you try to receive data through Bluetooth connectivity, change the location where the data is stored.

## Block devices

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Connectivity > Bluetooth**.


1. To block a device from establishing a Bluetooth connection to your device, open the Paired Devices tab as described for "Pair devices" on page 88.
2. Scroll to a device you want to block, then select **Options > Block**.
3. To unblock a device, open the Blocked Devices tab, scroll to a device, then select **Options > Delete**.
4. To unblock all blocked devices, select **Options > Delete all**.

If you reject a pairing request from another device, you are asked if you want to block all future connection requests from that device. If you accept the query, the remote device is added to the list of blocked devices.

## Remote SIM mode

Before the **Remote SIM** mode can be activated, the two devices must be paired and the pairing initiated from the other device. When pairing, use a 16-digit pass code, and set the other device to Authorized.

To use the **Remote SIM** mode with a compatible car kit enhancement, activate Bluetooth connectivity and enable the use of the remote SIM mode with your device. Activate the **Remote SIM** mode from the other device.

When the **Remote SIM** mode is on in your device, **Remote SIM** mode is displayed in standby mode. The connection to the wireless network is turned off, as indicated by  in the signal strength indicator area, and you cannot use SIM card services or features requiring cellular network coverage.

When the wireless device is in **Remote SIM** mode, you can only use a compatible connected enhancement, such as a car kit, to make or receive calls. Your wireless device will not make any calls while in this mode, except to the emergency numbers programmed into your device. To make calls from your device, you must leave the remote SIM mode. If the device is locked, enter the lock code to unlock it.

To leave the remote SIM mode, press the Power key, then select **Exit remote SIM mode**.

## PC connections

You can use your mobile device with a variety of compatible PC connectivity and data communications applications. With **Ovi Suite**, you can, for example, transfer files and images between your device and a compatible computer.



**NOTE:** To avoid corrupting data, do not disconnect the USB data cable during data transfer.

## To transfer data between your device and a PC

1. Insert a memory card into your device, and connect the device to a compatible PC with the data cable.
2. When the device asks which mode to use, select **Mass storage**. In this mode, you can see your device as a removable hard drive in your computer.
3. End the connection from the computer (from the Unplug or Eject Hardware wizard in Microsoft Windows, for example) to avoid damaging the memory card.



# Connectivity

## USB data connection options

<b>Ovi Suite</b>	To use <b>Ovi Suite</b> with your device, install <b>Ovi Suite</b> on your PC, connect the data cable, then select <b>Ovi Suite</b> .
<b>Mass storage</b>	To view your phone on a computer as a mass storage device where you can transfer any data files.
<b>Image transfer</b>	To connect your phone to a compatible printer.
<b>Media transfer</b>	To synchronize music with Windows Media Player; a compatible memory card must be inserted into the phone.
<b>Connect PC to Web</b>	Enables your phone to provide your computer with access to the Internet.

- To synchronize the music in your device with Music Player, install the **Music Player** software onto your PC, connect the data cable, then select **Media transfer**.
- To change the USB mode you normally use with the data cable, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Connectivity > USB** and **USB connection mode**, then choose the option.
- To set the device to ask for the mode each time you connect the data cable to the device, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Connectivity > USB** and **Ask on connection > Yes**.

## Ovi Suite

**Ovi Suite** is a set of applications that you can install onto a compatible PC. **Ovi Suite** groups all available applications in a launcher window you can open the applications from. **Ovi Suite** is included on the SD card supplied with your Vertu phone.

You can use **Ovi Suite** to synchronize your contacts, calendar, and to-do lists as well as other notes between your device and a compatible PC application. You can also use **Ovi Suite** to

transfer bookmarks between your device and compatible browsers and transfer images and video clips between your device and compatible PCs.

Pay careful attention to synchronization settings. Data deletion as part of the normal synchronization process is determined by the settings selected.

To use **Ovi Suite**, you need a PC that runs Microsoft Windows XP (SP2 or later) or Windows Vista (SP1 or later) and has USB or Bluetooth connectivity.

Ovi Suite is only compatible with PCs.

For more information about **Ovi Suite**, see the Support area at [www.ovi.com](http://www.ovi.com).

## Install Ovi Suite

The latest version of Ovi Suite can be downloaded and installed on your PC from [www.ovi.com](http://www.ovi.com).



**NOTE:** When you are working on your phone with the USB cable connected in **Mass storage** mode, you will find that the **E** and **F** drives are not available for storing data or for any phone use. Once you disconnect the USB cable, these drives become available again.

## iSync

The Mac's iSync application lets you automatically transfer information from iCal calendars and Address Book contacts stored on a Mac to your mobile phone. Your cell phone can be synchronized using iSync to display your latest events, and your contact list can always be up-to-date with your Mac.

Before synchronizing your Mac computer and Vertu phone, you need to install Vertu iSync plug-ins. This can be downloaded from the Vertu technical support site. For more information please visit the technical support page of the Vertu web site, select "Software for MAC and PC", then choose Constellation Quest and download iSync plug-ins to your MAC.

## Net Settings



Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Net settings**.

Net settings enables you to set up Internet call services.

To add a new Internet call service, select **Download**.

To view and edit the settings for a specific service, select that service.



## Internet

With the Web browser, you can view full hypertext markup language (HTML) Web pages on the Internet. You can also browse Web pages that are specifically designed for mobile devices, and use extensible hypertext markup language (XHTML) or wireless markup language (WML).

To browse the Web, you need an Internet access point configured in your phone. Using the Web browser requires network support.

## Browsing the Web

To open the Web browser:

1. Select **Menu > Web**.  
Or press and hold **0** in the **Home screen**.
2. By default, the Web page displays in Bookmarks view, displaying a number of preselected bookmarks.
3. Some Web pages may contain material, such as video clips, that requires a large amount of memory to view. If your device runs out of memory while loading such a Web page, insert a memory card. Otherwise, the video clips are not displayed.



**TIP:** To send the browser to the background without exiting the application or closing the connection, press the **End key** once.

## Network destinations

This feature allows your Constellation Quest to automatically select your preferred wireless access point for Internet use. If your phone finds a wireless LAN that you previously configured for use by the phone and have set as the highest priority, the phone will automatically select it as the access point on subsequent occasions. This means that you will automatically use your preferred Internet access point when it is available, potentially ensuring you are using the highest speed data connectivity and/or cheapest rate.


## Working with the Internet

To check how your phone is connecting to the Internet, refer to **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > Connection > Destinations > Internet**.

Review the current options, then select **Options > Organize > Change priority** to change the priority of the connection method, if desired.

To add an alternative Internet access point, in **Network destinations**, select **Internet > Options > New access point**.

The table below lists commonly used commands for navigating the web.

Go to a Web page	In Bookmarks view, select a bookmark, or start entering a Web address (the  field opens automatically), then select <b>Go to</b> .
Open a new Web page	<b>Options &gt; Go to &gt; New Web page</b> .
Open a Web feed	<b>Options &gt; Go to &gt; Web feeds</b> .
Access History	<b>Options &gt; Go to &gt; History</b> .
Bookmark pages	This adds a new bookmark to the Web page: <b>Options &gt; Bookmark options &gt; Add bookmark</b> .
Bookmark Manager	To manage your bookmarked pages, select <b>Options</b> and the relevant option.
Clear privacy data	Clears saved data from the Cache, Cookies, and History as well as password data. Select <b>Options &gt; Clear privacy data</b> and the relevant option. Also available from <b>Options &gt; Settings &gt; Privacy</b> .
Set up the home page	<b>Options &gt; Settings &gt; General &gt; Home page</b> .
Disable graphics	Disable graphics to save memory and speed up downloading. Select <b>Options &gt; Settings &gt; Page &gt; Load content &gt; Text only</b> .
View snapshots of visited Web pages	Select <b>Back</b> . A list of pages you visited during the current browsing session opens. This option is available if <b>History list</b> is activated. See <b>Settings &gt; General &gt; History list</b> .
View the shortcut keys	<b>Options &gt; Keypad shortcuts</b> . To edit the shortcut keys, select <b>Edit</b> .
Refresh the Web page content	<b>Options &gt; Web page options &gt; Reload</b> .





## Working with the Internet

Block or allow the automatic opening of multiple windows	<b>Options &gt; Web page options &gt; Block pop-ups or Allow pop-ups.</b>
Zoom In	Press * (star key).
Zoom Out	Press # (pound key).
Close Web	<b>Options &gt; Exit.</b>

Web browser options:

### Browser toolbar








The browser toolbar helps you select frequently used browser functions.

Open toolbar	Press 1 or the Middle Select key on a blank area of the Web page.
Close toolbar	Press <b>Hide</b> . Also closes automatically after a subsequent action.
Move within the toolbar	Scroll left or right.

To select a function in the toolbar:

**Options > Settings > Toolbar shortcuts.**

1. Press the scroll key.
2. In the toolbar, select one of the following actions, depending on what you want to do:

	<b>Go to Web address</b>	Enter a Web address.
	<b>Recently visited pages</b>	View a list of the Web addresses you visit frequently.
	<b>Bookmarks</b>	Open Bookmarks view.
	<b>Full screen</b>	View the Web page in full screen.
	<b>Overview</b>	Display an overview of the current Web page.
	<b>Search by keyword</b>	Search the current Web page.
	<b>Settings</b>	Modify the Web browser settings.

### Navigate pages

When browsing a large Web page, you can use **Mini map** or **Page overview** to view the page quickly.

Using the **Mini map**:

1. Select **Menu > Web**.
2. Activate the **Mini map**. Select **Options > Settings > General > Mini map > On**. When you scroll through a large Web page, the **Mini map** opens and displays an overview of the page.
3. Move around the **Mini map** by scrolling left, right, up, or down.
4. When you find the desired location, stop scrolling. The **Mini map** disappears and leaves you at the selected location.

To locate information on a Web page using **Page overview**:

1. Press the number 8 key. A miniature image of the current Web page opens.
2. Move around the miniature image by scrolling up, down, left, or right.
3. When you find a section you want to view, select **OK** to go to that section on the Web page.





## Media feeds



Media feeds allow you to easily follow news headlines and your favorite news feed. Media feeds, also known as Web feeds or RSS feeds, are a collection of news items found on Web pages. For example, they are used to share the latest news headlines. Media feeds are commonly found on news sites, blogs, and wiki pages. The browser application automatically detects if a Web page contains media feeds.

To subscribe to a feed:

1. Highlight the media feed icon on the Web page, then press the **Middle Select** key.
2. The **Subscribe to feed?** message displays. Select **Yes**.
3. The Web page is now added to your list of media feeds.
4. The feed will now be included in the list of feeds that displays on the **Home screen** of your phone.

The table below lists some common commands for use with media feeds.

Subscribe to an available media feed on the current page	Highlight the feed link, then select <b>Options &gt; Subscribe to Web feeds</b> .
Update a media feed	In the <b>Web feeds</b> view, select a feed and <b>Options &gt; Web feed options &gt; Refresh</b> .
Set automatic update for all media feeds	In the <b>Web feeds</b> view, select <b>Options &gt; Edit &gt; Edit</b> and select a time interval. This option is not available if one or more feeds are marked.



**WARNING:** When using **Web feeds**, it is strongly recommended that **Roaming** is switched off. Charges for feeds may be imposed by the network operator. Such changes can vary considerably depending on the operator. In the Media Feeds panel, select **Options > Bookmarks > Web feeds > Update when roaming**.

## Accessing media feeds

The **Media Feeds** panel displays media feeds, including any feeds that have been added manually in the **Latest headlines** panel.

1. To access the list of media feeds, on the **Home screen**, highlight the **Media Feeds** area and press the **Middle Select** key; the **Latest headlines** panel then displays.
2. Select **Options > Feed list**; the **Media Feeds** panel then displays.

## Web feeds

1. On the browser home page, which by default is Bookmarks, select **Options > Go to > Web feeds**; the **Web feeds** page then displays.
2. To add a new feed, select **Options > Web feed options > New feed**.
3. A new **New feed** panel appears for you to complete. Add the title and URL, then decide how often you want the feed to be updated.
4. Web feeds can be exported or imported.

## Accessing Bookmarks

You can store your favorite Web pages in Bookmarks for instant access.

To access your bookmarks:

1. If you have a page other than Bookmarks as your home page, select **Options > Go to > Bookmarks**.
2. Select a Web address in the list or collection of bookmarks in the Recently Visited Pages folder.

Useful commands related to Bookmarks are shown below.

Save the current Web page as a bookmark	While browsing, select <b>Options &gt; Web page options &gt; Save as bookmark</b> .
Edit or delete bookmarks	With bookmarks displayed, select <b>Options &gt; Bookmark Manager</b> and the relevant option.
Send or add a bookmark, or set a bookmarked Web page as the home page	Select <b>Options &gt; Bookmark options</b> , then choose the relevant option.

# Working with the Internet



## Content search

With keyword search, you can quickly find the information you are looking for on a Web page.

- To search for text within the current Web page, select **Options > Find keyword**.
- To go to the previous or next match, scroll up or down.



**TIP:** To search for text within the current Web page, press 2.

## End the connection

To end the connection and close the Browser application, select **Options > Exit**.

## Privacy data

All Privacy data can be deleted with the **All** command, or specific items can be deleted separately, as described below.

To delete All Privacy data, select **Options > Clear privacy data > All**.

## Empty the cache

Emptying the cache memory helps you keep your data secure. The information or services you have accessed are stored in the cache memory of the device. If you have accessed or tried to access confidential information requiring passwords, empty the cache after each browsing session.

With the Web browser open, select **Options > Clear privacy data > Cache**.

## Delete cookies

Cookies contain information collected about your visits to Web pages.

To delete cookies, select **Options > Clear privacy data > Cookies**.

## Delete history

**History** contain information about Web pages you have visited.

To delete the history, select **Options > Clear privacy data > History**.

## Form/password data

Form/password data contains information on the passwords or data you enter into different forms on Web pages.

To delete **Form/password data**, select **Options > Clear privacy data > Form/password data**.

## Connection security

With a secure connection and security certificates, you can safely browse the Internet.

If the security indicator (ICON) is displayed during a connection, the data transmission between the device and the Internet gateway or server is encrypted.

The security icon does not indicate that the data transmission between the gateway and the content server (where the data is stored) is secure. The service provider secures the data transmission between the gateway and the content server.

Security certificates may be required for some services, such as banking services. You are notified if the identity of the server is not authentic or if you do not have the correct security certificate in your device. For more information, contact your service provider.



**IMPORTANT:** Even if the use of certificates makes the risks involved in remote connections and software installation considerably smaller, they must be used correctly in order to benefit from increased security. The existence of a certificate does not offer any protection in itself; the certificate manager must contain correct, authentic, or trusted certificates for increased security to be available. Certificates have a limited lifetime. If **Expired certificate** or **Certificate not valid yet** is shown, even if the certificate should be valid, check that the current date and time in your device are correct.

Before changing any certificate settings, you must make sure that you really trust the owner of the certificate and that the certificate really belongs to the listed owner.



## Web settings

To access the Web settings, select **Menu > Web** and **Options > Settings**, then select the appropriate function from the following:

### General settings

<b>Access point</b>	Change the default access point; options include Internet, WAP Services, and Always Ask. Some or all access points may be preset in your device by your service provider. You may not be able to change, create, edit, or remove them.
<b>Home page</b>	Define the home page.
<b>Mini map</b>	Turn <b>Mini map</b> on or off. <b>Mini map</b> helps with Web page navigation.
<b>History list</b>	Select <b>On</b> while browsing, and a list of the pages you have visited can be seen during the current session. Select <b>Back</b> to view the pages.
<b>Web address suffix</b>	Allows you to define the type of Web addresses that are valid, such as .com, .net, and .org.
<b>Security warnings</b>	Hide or show security notifications.
<b>Java/ECMA script</b>	Enable or disable the use of scripts.
<b>Java/ECMA script errors</b>	Select whether you want to receive log and pop-up notes, create a log file, show pop-up notes, or none at all.

### Page settings

<b>Load content</b>	Select whether you want to load images and other objects while browsing. If you select <b>Text only</b> and want to load images or objects later while browsing, select <b>Options &gt; Display options &gt; Load images</b> .
<b>Default encoding</b>	If text characters are not shown correctly, you can select another encoding according to the language of the current page.
<b>Block pop-ups</b>	Allow or block automatic opening of different pop-ups while browsing.
<b>Automatic reload</b>	Select whether you want the Web pages to be refreshed automatically while browsing.
<b>Font size</b>	Define the font size used for Web pages.

## Privacy settings

<b>Recently visited pages</b>	Enable or disable automatic bookmark collection. If you want to continue saving the addresses of the visited Web pages into the Recently Visited Pages folder but hide the folder in Bookmarks view, select <b>Hide folder</b> .
<b>Form data saving</b>	Select whether you want the passwords or data you enter into different forms on Web pages to be saved and used the next time you open the page.
<b>Cookies</b>	Enable or disable the reception and sending of <b>Cookies</b> .
<b>Serial no. sending</b>	The options are <b>On</b> and <b>Off</b> .

## Web feed settings

<b>Acc. point for auto-update</b>	Select the desired access point for updating. This option is only available when <b>Automatic updates</b> is active.
<b>Update when roaming</b>	Select whether you want the Web feeds to be updated automatically when roaming.

Note that options available may vary.

## Keypad shortcuts

0	Go to <b>Home page</b>
1	Opens toolbar
2	Search by keyword
3	Back one page
4	Save as bookmark
5	Keyboard shortcuts
6	<b>Reload</b>
7	Full screen
8	<b>Page overview</b>
9	<b>Go to Web address</b>
*	Star Zooms In
#	Pound Zooms Out



## Office Tools

Your Vertu phone contains a suite of useful tools in the Office folder. Office includes two note generators, calculator, conversion tool, file manager, ZIP manager, Dictionary, Intranet and Quickoffice for viewing Microsoft Office files.

## Active Notes



Active Notes allows you to create, edit, and view different kinds of notes, for example, meeting memos, hobby notes, or shopping lists. You can insert images, videos, and sound into the notes. You can link notes to other applications, such as Contacts, and send notes to others.

### Create and edit notes

Select **Menu > Office > Active notes**. To add a new note, select **Options > New Note**. Or, in **Active notes**, select the new note by pressing the **Middle Select** key. To create a note, start writing.

To edit a note, select the note and **Options > Editing options**.

To add boldface, italics, or underlining to your text or change the font color, press and hold the Shift key, then scroll to select the text. Select **Options > Text** and the relevant option. A list of other options appears. They are:

- **Insert object** — Inserts images, sound or video clips, business cards, Web bookmarks, and files.
- **Insert new** — Adds new items to the note, such as images and sound and video clips.
- **Input options** — Set the way the note is written. You can turn on predictive text, change the settings of word autocompletion and text correction, and set the writing language.

Other functions are available in **Active notes**. You can organize your notes by creating folders for different notes. Change note settings, the appearance of notes, and the note storage location. You can also move, rename, and delete notes.

## Settings for Active Notes

Select **Menu > Office > Active notes** and **Options > Settings**.

- To select where to save notes, select **Memory in use** and the desired memory.
- To change the layout of active notes or to view the notes as a list, select **Change view > Grid** or **List**.
- To see a note in the background when making or receiving phone calls, select **Show note during call > Yes**.



**TIP:** If you temporarily do not want to see notes during phone calls, select **Show note during call > No**. This way, you do not have to remove the links between notes and contact cards.

## Calculator



Select **Menu > Office > Calculator**.

This calculator has limited accuracy and is designed for simple calculations.

To make a calculation, enter the first number of the calculation. Use the scroll bars and the **Middle Select** key to select a function, such as Add or Subtract, from the function map. Enter the second number, then select the equals sign (=). The calculator performs operations in the order they are entered. The result of the calculation remains in the editor field and can be used as the first number of a new calculation.

The device saves the result of the last calculation in Last Result. Exiting the Calculator application or switching off the device does not clear the memory. To recall the last saved result the next time you open the Calculator application, select **Options > Last result**.

To save the numbers or results of a calculation, select **Options > Memory > Save**.

To retrieve and then use the results of a calculation in a new calculation, select **Options > Memory > Recall**.



## File manager



Select **Menu > Office > File mgr.**

With File Manager, you can browse, manage, and open files from various locations. It can be from the phone memory, mass storage, or memory card.

The available options may vary.

To map or delete drives or to define settings for a compatible remote drive connected to your device, select **Options > Remote drives**.

### Find and organize files

Select **Menu > Office > File mgr.**




- To find a file, select **Options > Find**, then choose the location where you want to search. Enter a search term that matches the filename.
- To move and copy files and folders, or to create new folders, select **Options > Organize**, then select the appropriate option.
- To map a **Remote drives > Map new drive**.

### Manage the phone memory

For all options to be available, a compatible memory card must be inserted into the device.

Select **Menu > Office > File mgr.**

The amount of memory available in each of the three memory options in your phone is displayed. They are:

-  C: Phone memory
-  E: Mass storage
-  F: Removable memory card

Select **Options**, then choose from the following:

- **Back up phone memory** — Creates a backup on memory card. Existing backup will be overwritten.
- **Restore from mem. card** — Restores the backup data from memory cards to phone memory.

Other memory card options include the following:

- **Memory card options** — Name or format a memory card.
- **Memory card password** — Set a password to protect a memory card.

You can format the **Mass memory**, although all data is deleted during the process.

Open the **Mass memory**, then select **Options > Format mass memory**.

## Quickoffice



Select **Menu > Office > Quickoffice**.

Quickoffice consists of Quickword for viewing Microsoft Word documents, Quicksheet for viewing Microsoft Excel worksheets, Quickpoint for viewing Microsoft PowerPoint presentations, and Quickmanager. You can view and edit Microsoft Office 2000, XP, 2003, and 2007 documents (DOC, XLS, and PPT file formats) with Quickoffice.

Not all file formats or features are supported.

## Converter



Using **Converter**, you can convert units of measurement for length, area, volume, energy, pressure, time, temperature, velocity, weights, and currency.

### Convert measurements

Select **Menu > Office > Converter**.

1. Scroll to the **Type** field, then use the **Middle Select** key to open a list of measures. Select the measurement type to use (other than currency) and **OK**.
2. Scroll to the first **Unit** field, then use the **Middle Select** key to open the unit of measurement. Select the unit to convert from and **OK**. Scroll to the next unit field, then select the unit to convert to.
3. Scroll to the first **Amount** field, and enter the value to convert. The other **Amount** field changes automatically to show the converted value.



## Office Tools

### Set base currency and exchange rate

Select **Menu > Office > Converter**.

When you change base currency, you must enter new exchange rates because all previously set exchange rates are cleared.

Before you can make currency conversions, you must choose a base currency and add exchange rates. The rate of the base currency is always 1. The base currency determines the conversion rates of the other currencies.

1. To set the exchange rate for the unit of currency, scroll to the **Type** field, then select **Options > Currency rates**.
2. Scroll to a currency type or rename a line (for example, from Foreign to EUR), then enter the exchange rate you want to set for a single unit of currency.
3. To change the base currency, scroll to the currency, then select **Options > Set as base currency**.
4. Select **Done > Yes** to save the changes.
5. After you have set all the necessary exchange rates, you can make currency conversions.

Note that rounding errors may occur with this tool.

### Zip Manager



Select **Menu > Office > Zip**.

With Zip Manager, you can create new archive files to store compressed ZIP files, add single or multiple compressed files or directories to an archive, set, clear, or change the archive password for protected archives, and change settings, such as compression level and whether to include subfolders.

You can save the archive files to the device memory or a memory card.

### PDF Reader



Select **Menu > Office > Adobe PDF**.

With PDF Reader, you can read PDF documents on your phone's screen, search for text in PDF documents, modify settings, such as zoom level and page views, and send PDF files using email.

### Dictionary



Select **Menu > Office > Dictionary**.

Dictionary allows you to look up word meanings as well as translate words from one language into another.

#### To find a word meaning

Simply enter text into the search field. As you enter text, word suggestions appear. Selecting the word with the **Middle Select** key displays the meaning and usage examples.

Selecting **Options** brings up a list of options, including:

- **Listen** - Allows you to listen to the word searched for.
- **Font size** - Provides you with two text view options: **Normal** and **Large**.
- **New search** - Exits from the present screen and brings up the search field.

#### Translating a word or phrase

1. With **Dictionary** open, select **Options > Languages > Source** and choose a language.
2. Repeat this process to choose a **Target language**.
3. Type in the word you want to translate, then press the **Middle Select** key when the word or phrase is translated. Only items displayed in the list can be translated.

Not all languages are supported.

Select **Options**, then choose from the following:

<b>Listen</b>	Listen to the selected word.
<b>History</b>	Find previously translated words from the current session.
<b>Languages</b>	Change the source or target language, download languages from the Internet, or remove a language from the dictionary. You cannot remove the English language from the dictionary. You can have two additional languages installed, besides English.
<b>Speech</b>	Edit the voice feature settings. You can adjust the speed and volume of the voice.





## Installing languages

You need an Internet connection to download language dictionaries.

Select **Options > Languages > Download languages**.

The phone connects to the Nokia language server, where the SIS (.sis) translation languages are stored.

Select a language. Check the **Accept** to Start Download button to accept the conditions when prompted; the download then begins.

Select a location for the dictionary when prompted.

## Notes



Select **Menu > Office > Notes**.

You can create and send notes to other compatible devices and save received plain text files (TXT file format) to **Notes**.

- To create a new note, select **Options > New note**, or just start entering the text and the note editor opens automatically.
- To open a note, select **Options > Open**, or go the particular note and press the **Middle Select** key.
- To send a note to other compatible devices, select **Options > Send** and the appropriate option you want to use.
- To print a note, select **Options > Printing options** and the relevant option for printing, page setup, preview, and printers.
- To synchronize or enter synchronization settings for a note, select **Options > Synchronization**. Select **Start** to initialize synchronization or **Settings** to enter the synchronization settings for the note.

## Intranet



The intranet application allows you to connect to your company intranet.

Select **Menu > Office > Intranet**.

- To establish connection to an intranet, select **Options > Connect to Intranet**. To choose a destination when there is more than one intranet available, select **Change destination**.
- To view the available wireless LANs (WLAN), select **Other WLAN networks**.
- To select a connection manually, select **Manual connection**.
- To update the destination and connection method, select **Options > Refresh**.

The available options may vary.

Intranet Settings:

<b>Intranet Web user name</b>	Enter your intranet user name.
<b>Intranet Web password</b>	Enter your intranet password.
<b>Intranet Web domain</b>	Enter the intranet domain name.
<b>Startup view</b>	Select which page is used as the intranet home page.
<b>Proxy server address</b>	Enter the proxy server address.
<b>Proxy port number</b>	Enter the proxy server port number.
<b>Open browser once conn.</b>	Select whether to allow the browser to launch once connected to the intranet.
<b>VPN timeout</b>	Select whether to have a timeout for the virtual private network. Enter the time in minutes.





Gallery allows you to store and manage multimedia content on your Vertu phone. This includes images, video and sound clips, songs, streaming links, and presentations. Your Vertu phone has two internal memories: the phone memory and an internal memory card (not removable). You can store files in either memory, but the memory card has more storage space.



**NOTE:** The internal memory card cannot be removed from your Vertu phone.

## Gallery main view

To access the **Gallery**:

1. On the **Home screen**, select **Menu > Media > Gallery**.
2. Select from the following:

<b>Images</b>		View images and video clips in <b>Photos</b>
<b>Video clips</b>		View video clips in Video Center
<b>Songs</b>		Open Music Player
<b>Sound clips</b>		Listen to sound clips
<b>Streaming links</b>		View and open streaming links
<b>Presentations</b>		View presentations

You can browse and open folders and copy and move items to folders. You can also create albums and copy and add items to albums.

Files stored on your compatible memory card (if inserted) are indicated by the icon.

- To open a file, select the file in the list. Video clips and streaming links open and play in **Video center**, and music and sound clips in **Music Player**.
- To move or copy a file to another memory location, select a file **Options > Move and copy**.

## Sound clips

Select **Menu > Media > Gallery > Sound clips**.

This folder contains all the sound clips you have downloaded from the Web. The sound clips created with the **Recorder** application, with MMS optimized or normal quality settings, are also saved in this folder, but the sound clips created with high-quality settings are stored in the Songs folder in the **Music Player** application.

- To listen to a sound file, select the file in the list.
- To rewind or fast-forward, scroll left or right.
- To download sounds, select **Downld. sounds**.

## Streaming links

Select **Menu > Media > Gallery > Streaming links**.

- To open a streaming link, select the link in the list.
- To add a new streaming link, select **Options > New link**.

## Presentations

Select **Menu > Media > Gallery > Presentations**.

With presentations, you can view scalable vector graphics (SVG) and Flash files (SWF), such as cartoons and maps. SVG images maintain their appearance when printed or viewed at different screen sizes and resolutions.

- To view files, select **Presentations**. Go to an image, then select **Options > Play**.
- To pause playing, select **Options > Pause**.
- To zoom in, press 5. To zoom out, press 0.
- To rotate the image 90 degrees clockwise or counterclockwise, press 1 or 3, respectively. To rotate the image 45 degrees, press 7 or 9.
- To switch between full and normal screen mode, press \*.



## Songs

Songs opens Music Player, displaying your music library. Refer to Media for more information on Music Player.

## Images




Images opens the photo viewer. This allows you to view your photos classified in a number of different ways.

**Photos** contains images sorted into the following categories.

Select **Menu > Media > Gallery > Images**, then select from the following:

<b>All</b>	View all items
<b>Captured</b>	View all the images and videos you captured.
<b>Months</b>	View images and videos categorized by the month they were captured in.
<b>Albums</b>	View the default albums and the ones you created.
<b>Tags</b>	View the tags you created for each item.
<b>Downloads</b>	View items and videos downloaded from the Web or received as multimedia or email messages.
<b>Share online</b>	Post your images or videos to the Web.

File storage locations are indicated with the appropriate icon as follows:

-  C: Phone memory
-  E: Mass storage
-  F: Removable memory card

To copy or move files to another memory location, select the file, then select **Options > Move and copy**, and move/copy to appropriate locations.

## Video clips

Videos opens Video Center. This allows you to view your videos classified in a number of different ways.

Videos contain the video clips taken from the camera as well as any videos watched over the Web.

Select **Menu > Media > Gallery > Video clips**, then select from the following:

<b>Last watched</b>	View the video you watched most recently
<b>My videos</b>	View a list of all the downloaded videos
<b>Video feeds</b>	View and manage your subscribed video feeds
<b>Add new services</b>	To connect to a service to install video services.

## View images and videos

Images and video clips can also be sent to you from a compatible device. To view a received image or video clip in **Photos**, you must first save it.

The images and video clip files are in a loop and ordered by date and time.

The number of files is displayed. To browse the files one by one, scroll left or right.

To browse files in groups, scroll up or down.

- To open a file, select the file. When an image opens, use the Volume keys to zoom in or out.
- To hide the toolbar, select **Options > Hide toolbar**.
- To start a slide show, select **Options > Slide show** and the option you want.
- To tag an image or video, select **Options > Add tags**.
- To add to an album, select **Options > Add to album**.
- To print your images on a compatible printer, select **Options > To printer or kiosk**.
- To edit an image or a video clip, select **Options > Edit**.
- To move or copy an image or video, select **Options > Move and copy**, then choose the appropriate option.
- To assign the image or video to a particular contact or use it as a wallpaper, select **Options > Use image** for images and **Options > Use video** for videos.



# Gallery

## View and edit file details

Select **Menu > Media > Gallery > Images**. Go to an item.

1. To view and edit image or video properties, select **Options > Details > View and edit**, then select from the following:

<b>Tags</b>	View the currently used tags. To add more tags to the current file, select <b>Add</b> .
<b>Description</b>	View a free-form description of the file. To add a description, select the field.
<b>Location</b>	View GPS location information, if available.
<b>Title</b>	View the thumbnail image of the file and the current filename. To edit the filename, select the filename field.
<b>Albums</b>	View the albums the current file is located in.
<b>Resolution</b>	View the size of the image in pixels.
<b>Duration</b>	View the length of the video.
<b>Usage rights</b>	To view the DRM rights of the current file, if available, select <b>View</b> .

## Organize images and videos

Select **Menu > Media > Gallery > Images**. You can organize files as follows:

- To view items in **Tags** view, **Add tags** to the items.
- To view items by month, select **Months**.
- To create an album to store items, select **Albums > Options > New album**.
- To add an image or a video clip to an album, select the item and **Options > Add to album**.








## Active toolbar

To enable the active toolbar when you have selected an image or a video clip in a view, press the Left Select key.

In the active toolbar, go to different items, then select the desired option. The available options vary depending on the view you are in and whether you have selected an image or a video clip.

To hide the toolbar, select **Options > Hide toolbar**. To activate the active toolbar when it is hidden, press the scroll key.

Select an image or a video clip, then select from the following:

	View the image in landscape or portrait mode.
	Play the video clip.
	Send the image or video clip.
	Upload the image or video clip to a compatible online album (only available if you have set up an account for a compatible online album).
	Add the item to an album.
	Use Details to manage tags and other properties of the item.
	Deletes the image.



## Albums

With albums, you can conveniently manage your images and video clips.

- To create a new album, select **Menu > Media > Gallery > Images > Albums**. Using the **Left Select** key, press **Options > New album**. Enter a name for the album. A new album is created.
- To add a particular image or video to an album, select the image or video you want to add. Then select **Options > Add to album**. A list of albums is displayed. Select from the list of albums or create a new album by selecting **New album**. Or, using the Up/Down scroll keys, select **Add to album** in the toolbar.
- The items you add to the album are still visible in **Photos**.
- To remove an image or a video clip from an album, select **Gallery > Images > Albums**. Open the album and select the image you want to delete. Using the **Left Select** key, select **Options > Remove from album**. The image is removed from the album. Though the image is removed from the album, it is still present in the folder where all the captured images are present.
- To delete an image from the album, open the image and, in the toolbar that appears, select Delete. This deletes the image from the album as well as all instances of the image.
- To delete an album, select **Gallery > Images > Albums**. Select the album to be deleted, then press **Options > Delete**. The album is deleted. Any images in the album are not deleted.

## Tags

Use tags to categorize media items in **Gallery**. You can create and delete tags in Tag Manager. Tag Manager shows the currently used tags and the number of items associated with each tag.

- Select **Menu > Media > Gallery > Images**
- To open Tag Manager, select an image or a video clip and **Options > Details > Tag Manager**.
- Displays Create Tags in the Options menu.
- To assign a tag to an image, select the image and **Options > Add tags**.
- To create a tag, open the image or video, then select **Options > Add tags > New tag**.
- To see the tags you created, select **Media > Gallery > Images > Tags**. The size of the tag name corresponds to the number of items the tag is assigned to. To view all the images associated with a tag, select the tag in the list.

- To view the list in alphabetical order, select **Options > Alphabetical**.
- To view the list in Most Frequently Used order, select **Options > Most used**.
- To remove an image from a tag, select the tag and the image, then select **Options > Remove from tag**.

## Slide show

Select **Menu > Media > Gallery > Images**.

- To view your images as a slide show, select an image and **Options > Slide show > Play forwards** or **Play backwards**. The slide show starts from the selected file.
- To view only the selected images as a slide show, select **Options > Mark/Unmark > Mark** to mark images. To start the slide show, select **Options > Slide show > Play forwards** or **Play backwards**.
- To resume a paused slide show, select **Continue**.
- To end the slide show, select **End**.
- To browse the images, scroll left or right.

To adjust the slide show settings before starting the slide show, select **Options > Slide show > Settings**, then select from the following:

<b>Music</b>	Add sound to the slide show.
<b>Song</b>	Select a music file from the list.
<b>Delay between slides</b>	Adjust the tempo of the slide show.
<b>Transition</b>	Make the slide show move smoothly from one slide to another, and zoom in and out of the images randomly.

To adjust the volume during the slide show, use the **Volume** key.



# Gallery

## Edit images

### Image editor

- To edit images right after taking them or those already saved in **Gallery**, open an image, then select **Options > Edit**. The image editor opens and offers you different edit options indicated by small icons.
- Press Select to select an option. The image is changed accordingly. Select **Options > Apply effect** to apply the effect.

You can crop and rotate, adjust the brightness, color, contrast, and resolution, and add effects, text, clip art, or a frame.

You can apply different effects to the images. Some of the effects are described below.

### Crop image

To crop an image, select **Options > Apply effect > Crop** and a predefined aspect ratio in the list. To crop the image size manually, select **Manual**.

If you select **Manual**, a cross appears in the upper-left corner of the image. Use the scroll key to select the area to crop, then select Set. Another cross appears in the lower-right corner. Again, select the area to crop. To adjust the first selected area, select **Back**. The selected areas form a rectangle that encloses the cropped image.

If you select a predefined aspect ratio, select the upper-left corner of the area to crop. To resize the highlighted area, use the scroll key. To freeze the selected area, press the scroll key. To move the area within the picture, use the scroll key. To select the area to crop, press the scroll key.

### Reduce red-eye

- To reduce red-eye in an image, select **Options > Apply effect > Red-eye reduction**.
- Move the cross onto the eye, then press the Middle Select key. A loop appears on the display. To resize the loop to fit the size of the eye, use the left and right scroll keys. To reduce redness, press the Middle Select key. When you have finished editing the image, press **Done**.
- To save the changes and return to the previous view, press **Back**.

## Edit videos

The video editor supports 3GP and MP4 video file formats and AAC, AMR, MP3, and WAV audio file formats.

It does not necessarily support all features of a file format or all the variations of file formats.

To edit video clips in Photos, scroll to a video clip, select **Options > Edit**, then select from the following:

<b>Merge</b>	Add an image or a video clip to the beginning or end of the selected video clip.
<b>Change sound</b>	Add a new sound clip or replace the original sound in the video clip.
<b>Add text</b>	Add to the beginning or end of the video clip.
<b>Cut</b>	Trim the video and mark the sections you want to keep in the video clip.

To take a snapshot of a video clip, in the Cut Video view, select **Options > Take snapshot**. In the Thumbnail Preview view, press the scroll key, then select Take Snapshot.

## Print images

### Image print

To print images with Image Print, select the image you want to print, then select the print option in Photos, Camera, Image Editor, or Image Viewer.

Use Image Print to print your images using a compatible USB data cable or Bluetooth connectivity. You can also print images using wireless LAN. If a compatible memory card is inserted, you can store the images to the memory card then print them using a compatible printer.

You can only print images that are in JPEG format. The pictures taken with the camera are automatically saved in JPEG format.



## Printer selection

1. To print images with Image Print, select the image, select Options > To Printer or Kiosk, then choose the print option.
2. When you use Image Print for the first time, a list of available compatible printers is displayed. Select a printer.
3. The printer is set as the default printer.
4. To use a printer compatible with PictBridge, connect the compatible data cable before you select the print option and check that the data cable mode is set to **Image print** or **Ask on connection**. The printer is automatically displayed when you select the print option.
5. If the default printer is not available, a list of available printers is displayed.
6. To change the default printer, select **Options > Settings > Default printer**.

## Print preview

After you select the printer, the selected images are displayed using predefined layouts.

To change the layout, scroll left or right to browse through the available layouts for the selected printer. If the images do not fit on a single page, scroll up or down to display the additional pages.

## Print settings

The available options vary depending on the capabilities of the printing device you selected.

- To set a default printer, select **Options > Default printer**.
- To select the paper size, select **Paper size**, the size of paper in the list, and **OK**. Select **Cancel** to return to the previous view.



## About Home Network

Your Vertu phone is compatible with Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) and certified by the Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA). You can use a wireless LAN (WLAN) access point device or router to create a home network. Then you can connect compatible WLAN-enabled UPnP devices to the network. Compatible devices may include your mobile phone or a PC, sound system, television, or wireless multimedia receiver connected to a sound system or television.

You can share and synchronize media files in your mobile phone with other compatible UPnP- and DLNA-certified devices using the home network.

To activate the home network functionality and manage the settings, select **Menu > Applications > Home media**.

You can also use the **Home media** application to view and play media files from home network devices on your device or other compatible devices, such as a PC, sound system, or television.

- To view your media files on another home network device (for example, in Photos), select a file, **Options > Show via home net.**, and the device.
- To use the WLAN function of your phone in a home network, you must have a working WLAN home connection and other UPnP-enabled home devices connected to the same home network.

After setting up your home network, you can share your photos and video clips with your friends and family at home. You can also save your media to a media server or retrieve media files from a compatible home server. You can play music stored in your phone using a DLNA-certified home stereo system, controlling the playlists and volume levels directly from your device. In addition, you can view images captured with your phone's camera on a compatible TV screen, all controlled with your phone over WLAN.

The home network uses the security settings of the WLAN connection. Use the home network feature in a WLAN infrastructure network with a WLAN access point device and encryption enabled.

Your phone is connected to the home network only if you accept a connection request from another compatible device, or select the option to view, play, or copy media files on your phone or search for other devices.

## Important security information

When you configure your WLAN home network, you must enable an encryption method on your access point device and do the same on the other devices you intend to connect to your home network. Refer to the documentation of the devices. Keep any passcodes secret and in a safe place, separate from the devices.

You can view or change the settings of the WLAN Internet access point in your device.

If you use the ad hoc operating mode to create a home network with a compatible device, enable one of the encryption methods in WLAN security mode when you configure the Internet access point. This step reduces the risk of an unwanted party joining the ad hoc network.

Your device notifies you if another device attempts to connect to it and the home network. Do not accept connection requests from an unknown device.

If you use WLAN in a network that does not have encryption, turn off sharing your files with other devices, or do not share any private media files.

## Home network settings

To share media files saved in Photos with other UPnP-compatible and DLNA-certified devices through a wireless LAN (WLAN), you must create and configure your WLAN

home Internet access point, then configure the home network settings in the Home Media application.

The options related to home networks are not available in applications before you configure the settings in the Home Media application.

1. Select **Menu > Applications > Home media**.
2. When you access the Home Media application for the first time, the setup wizard opens, helping you enter the home network settings for your device. To use the setup wizard later, select **Options > Setup wizard**, then follow the instructions.
3. To connect a compatible PC to the home network, you must install the relevant software onto the PC.





## Configure settings

To configure the settings for home network, select **Options > Settings**, then choose from the following:

<b>Access point</b>	To set the device to ask for the home access point every time you connect to the home network, select <b>Always ask</b> . To define a new access point that is used automatically when you use the home network, select <b>Create new</b> . If your home network does not have WLAN security settings activated, a security warning is displayed. You can continue and activate WLAN security later or cancel setting the access point and first activate WLAN security.
<b>Phone's name</b>	Enter the device name displayed to other compatible devices in the home network.
<b>Copy to</b>	Select where to save copied media files. Options are C: Phone memory, E: Mass memory, and F: Memory card.

## Activate sharing and define content

Select **Menu > Applications > Home media**.

Select from the following:

<b>Content sharing</b>	Allow or deny sharing media files with compatible devices. Do not activate content sharing before you have configured all the other settings. If you activate content sharing, other UPnP-compatible devices in the home network can view and copy the files you selected for sharing in Images and Video Clips, and use the playlists you selected in Music. If you do not want other devices to access your files, deactivate content sharing.
<b>Images and video clips</b>	Select media files to share with other devices, or view the sharing status of images and videos. To update the content of the folder, select <b>Options &gt; Refresh content</b> .
<b>Music</b>	Select playlists to share with other devices, or view the sharing status and content of playlists. To update the content of the folder, select <b>Options &gt; Refresh content</b> .

## View and share media files

To share your media files with other UPnP-compatible devices in the home network, activate content sharing. If content sharing is deactivated in your device, you can still view and copy the media files stored in another home network device if it is allowed by the other device.

### Show media files stored in your device

To show your images, videos, and sound clips on another home network device, such as a compatible TV, do the following:

1. In Photos, select an image or a video clip; or in Gallery, select a sound clip and **Options > Show via home net**.
2. Select a compatible device on which the media file is shown. Images are shown both on the other home network device and your device, and video and sound are played only on the other device.
3. To stop sharing a media file, select **Options > Stop showing**.

### Show media files stored on another device

To show media files that are stored on another home network device on your device (or on a compatible TV, for example), do the following:

1. Select **Menu > Applications > Home media > Browse servers**. Your device searches for compatible devices. Device names are displayed.
2. Select a device.
3. Select the type of media you want to view from the other device. The available file types depend on the features of the other device.  
To search for files using specific criteria, select **Options > Find**. To sort the files found, select **Options > Sort by**.
4. Select the media file or folder you want to view.
5. Select **Play** or **Show**, and **On phone** or **On external device**.
6. Select the device on which you want to show the file.  
To stop sharing the media file, select **Back** or **Stop** (available when playing videos and music).



**TIP:** You can print images saved in Photos through a home network using a UPnP-compatible printer. Content sharing does not have to be activated.



# Home Network

## Copy media files

- To copy or transfer media files from your device to another compatible device, such as a UPnP-compatible PC, select a file in Photos, then select **Options > Move and copy > Copy to remote device** or **Move to remote device**. Content sharing does not have to be switched on.
- To copy or transfer files from the other device to your device, select a file in the other device, then select the desired copying option in the Options list. Content sharing does not have to be switched on.

## Home synchronization

### Synchronize media files

You can synchronize the media files in your mobile device with those in your home devices. Make sure your mobile device is within range of your home WLAN and the home network has been set up.

- To set up home synchronization, select **Menu > Applications > Home media > Media sync**, then complete the wizard.
- To run the wizard later, in Home Synchronization main view, select **Options > Run wizard**.
- To manually synchronize content in your mobile device with content in your home devices, select **Sync now**.

### Synchronization settings

To change the synchronization settings, select **Options > Synchronization settings**, then choose from the following:

<b>Synchronization</b>	Set automatic or manual synchronization.
<b>Source devices</b>	Select the source devices for synchronization.
<b>Memory in use</b>	View and select the memory used.
<b>Memory manager</b>	To be informed when the device is running out of memory, select Ask When Full.

### Define incoming files

To define and manage lists for incoming media files, select **Menu > Applications > Home media > Media sync > From home**.

To define the kinds of files you want to transfer to your device, select the files in the list.

To edit the transfer settings, select **Options > Edit**, then choose from the following:

<b>List name</b>	Enter a new name for the list.
<b>Shrink images</b>	Shrink images to save memory.
<b>Amount</b>	Define the maximum number or total size of the files.
<b>Starting with</b>	Define the download order.
<b>From</b>	Define the date of the oldest file you want to download. Only available for images and video clips.
<b>Until</b>	Define the date of the latest file you want to download. Only available for images and video clips.
<b>Add more rules</b>	Add rules to further define and control incoming files. Rules can be based on Source Devices, Contains Text, Track Length, and File Size, depending on file type.

For music files, you can also specify the genre, artist, album, and song you want to download and the source device used for downloading.

- To browse files in a specific category in your device, select a file type and **Options > Show files**.
- To create a predefined or customized list for incoming files, select **Options > New list**.
- To change the priority order of the lists, select **Options > Change priority**. Select the list you want to move, then select Grab. Move the list to the new location, then select Drop.

### Define outgoing files

To specify which types of files in your device to synchronize with your home media devices and how to synchronize them, select **Menu > Applications > Home media > Media sync**, then open **To home**. Select the media type, Options, and the corresponding settings, then choose from the following:

<b>Target devices</b>	Select target devices to synchronize with, or disable synchronization.
<b>Keep on phone</b>	Select Yes to keep the media content in your device after synchronization. With images, you can also select whether to keep the original or a scaled version of it in your device. Selecting the original size consumes more memory.



Your Vertu phone contains a variety of media applications for both business and leisure use.

The applications in Media are:

- Radio
- Music Player
- Ovi Music
- Recorder
- Gallery (see “Gallery” on page 100 for more information)
- Camera (see “Camera” on page 79 for more information)
- Share online
- RealPlayer
- Video Center

### Radio



Select **Menu > Media > Radio**. Radio has:

- FM Radio
- Internet Radio

### FM Radio

The FM radio depends on an antenna other than the wireless device antenna. A compatible headset or accessory must be attached to the device for the FM radio to function properly.

### Listen to the radio

Select **Menu > Media > Radio > FM radio**.

The quality of the radio broadcast depends on the coverage of the radio station in that particular area.

You can make a call or answer an incoming call while listening to the radio. The radio is muted when there is an active call.

To start a station search, use the Up or Down scroll key.

If you have saved radio stations in your device, use the **Left Select** or **Right Select** key to go to the next or previous saved station.

Select **Options**, then choose from the following:

- **Activate loudspeaker** — Listen to the radio using the loudspeaker.
- **Station directory** — View available stations based on location (network service).
- **Save station** — Save the current station to your station list.
- **Stations** — Open your list of saved stations.
- **Play in background** — Return to the home screen while listening to the FM radio in the background.
- **Manual tuning** — Change the frequency manually.



**WARNING:** Continuous exposure to high volumes may damage your hearing. Listen to music at a moderate level, and do not hold the device near your ear when the loudspeaker is in use.



**TIP:** You can make a call or answer an incoming call while listening to the radio. The radio is muted when there is an active call.

### Station directory

Select **Menu > Media > Radio > FM radio > Options > Station directory**.

The station directory allows you to view available stations depending on the location. You can select the location nearest to you.

Save the station you want by selecting **Options > Station > Save**.

# Media



## Save stations

To save a particular station, select **Menu > Media > Radio > FM radio > Options > Save station**.

To listen to a saved station, select **Options > Station > Listen**.

To change station information, select **Options > Station > Edit**.

## FM radio settings

To automatically search for alternative frequencies if the reception is weak, select **Menu > Media > Radio > FM radio > Options > Settings > Alternative frequencies > Auto scan on**.

To set the default access point for the radio, select **Options > Settings > Access point**.

To set your current region, select **Options > Settings > Current region**. This setting is displayed only if there is no network coverage when you start the application.

## Internet Radio

Select **Menu > Media > Radio > Internet radio**.

With the Internet Radio application (network service), you can listen to radio stations available on the Internet. To listen to Internet radio stations, you must have a wireless LAN (WLAN) or packet data access point set in your device. Listening to the stations may involve the transmission of large amounts of data through your service provider's network. The recommended connection method is WLAN. Check with your service provider for terms and conditions and data service fees before using other connections. For example, a flat rate data plan can allow large data transfers for a set monthly fee.

## Listen to Internet radio stations

Select a station from your favorites or the station directory, or search for stations by name using the Internet Radio service.

Select **Menu > Media > Radio > Internet radio**.

To listen to an Internet radio station, do the following:

Select **Options > Listen**. The Now Playing view opens, displaying information about the currently playing station and song. To pause the playback, press the scroll key; to resume, press the scroll key again.

To view station information, select **Options > Station information** (not available if you have saved the station manually).

If you are listening to a station saved in your favorites, scroll left or right to listen to the previous or next saved station.

## Favorite stations

You can listen to stations listed in your favorites or find more stations. Search for stations based on the following criteria:

- **Browse by genre** — View the available radio station genres.
- **Browse by language** — View the languages stations broadcast in.
- **Browse by country/region** — View the countries stations broadcast from.
- **Top stations** — View the most popular stations in the directory.

To manage stations manually in Favorites:

1. Select **Options > Add station manually**. Enter the Web address of the station and a name that you want to appear in the Favorites list.
2. To add the currently playing station to Favorites, select **Options > Add to Favorites**.
3. To view station information, move a station up or down in the list, or, to delete a station from Favorites, select **Options > Station** and the desired option.
4. To view only stations beginning with particular letters or numbers, start entering the characters. Matching stations are displayed.

You can also browse for station links with the Web Browser application. Compatible links are automatically opened in the Internet Radio application.

## Search for stations

Select **Menu > Media > Radio > Internet radio**.

To search for radio stations in the Internet Radio service by name, do the following:

1. Select **Search**.
2. Enter a station name or the first letters of the name into the search field, then press the **Middle Select** key.
3. Matching stations are displayed.
4. To listen to a station, select the station, then select **Options > Listen**.
5. To save a station to Favorites, select the station, then select **Options > Add to Favorites**.

To make another search, select **Options > Search again**.



### Internet radio settings

Select **Menu > Media > Radio > Internet radio > Options > Settings**.

To select the default access point to connect to the network, select **Default access point**, then choose from the available options. If you want the device to ask you to select the access point every time you open the application, select **GPRS connection bitrate**.

To change the connection speeds for different connection types, choose from the following:

- **GPRS connection bitrate** — GPRS packet data connections
- **3G connection bitrate** — 3G packet data connections
- **Wi-Fi connection bitrate** — WLAN connections

The quality of the radio broadcast depends on the selected connection speed. The higher the speed, the better the quality. To avoid buffering, use the highest quality only with high-speed connections.

### Music Player



Music Player supports file formats such as AAC, AAC+, eAAC +, MP3, and WMA. Music Player does not necessarily support all the features of a file format or all the variations of file formats.

To open the music player, select **Menu > Media > Music Player**.

### Play a song

Select **Menu > Media > Music Player**.

- To add all available songs to the music library, select **Options > Refresh library**.
- To play a song, select the desired category and the song.
- To pause playback, press the scroll key; to resume, press the scroll key again. To stop playback, scroll down.
- To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold the scroll key to the right or left.
- To skip to the next item, scroll right. To return to the beginning of the item, scroll left. To skip to the previous item, scroll left again within two seconds after a song has started.
- To modify the tone of the music playback, select **Options > Equalizer**.

- To modify the balance and stereo image, or to enhance the bass, select **Options > Settings**.
- To return to the home screen and leave the player playing in the background, press the **End** key briefly.



**WARNING:** Continuous exposure to high volumes may damage your hearing. Listen to music at a moderate level, and do not hold the device near your ear when the loudspeaker is in use.

### Playlists

To view and manage playlists, select **Music library > Playlists**.

- To create a new playlist, select **Options > New playlist**.
- To add songs to the playlist, select the song and **Options > Add to playlist > Saved playlist or New playlist**.
- To reorder songs in a playlist, scroll to the song you want to move, then select **Options > Reorder playlist**.

### Preset frequency settings

Select **Menu > Media > Music Player** and **Options > Go to Now Playing > Options > Equalizer**.

To use a preset frequency setting when playing music, select the frequency setting you want to use and **Options > Activate**.

To modify the frequency of a preset setting, select **Options > Edit** and a frequency band, then scroll up or down to adjust its value. You hear your frequency adjustment immediately in the playback.

To reset the frequency bands to their original values, select **Options > Reset to defaults**.

To create your own frequency setting, select **Options > New preset**. Enter a name for the frequency setting. Scroll up or down to move between the frequency bands, and set the frequency for each band.

# Media

## Ovi music



Select **Menu > Media > Ovi Music**.

In the Nokia Music Store (network service), you can search for, browse, and purchase music to download to your device.

To access the Nokia Music Store, you must have a valid Internet access point in the device. To purchase music, you first need to register for the service.

Nokia Music Store is not available in all countries or regions.

### Nokia Music Store settings

The availability and appearance of the Nokia Music Store settings may vary. The settings may also be predefined and not editable. You may be asked to select the access point to use when connecting to the Nokia Music Store; select Default Access Point.

In the Nokia Music Store, you may be able to edit the settings by selecting **Options > Settings**.

### Transfer music from a computer

In the Nokia Music Store, you may be able to transfer music from a computer.

You can use the following methods to transfer music:

- To install Nokia Ovi Player to manage and organize your music files, download the PC software from [www.ovi.com](http://www.ovi.com) and follow the instructions.
- To view your device on a computer as a mass storage device where you can transfer any data files to, connect to the computer with a compatible USB data cable or Bluetooth. If you are using a USB data cable, select Mass Storage as the connection mode. A compatible memory card must be in the device.
- To synchronize music with Windows Media Player, connect a compatible USB data cable, then select Media Transfer as the connection mode. A compatible memory card must be in the device.
- To change the default USB connection mode, select **Menu > Ctrl. panel > Connectivity > USB and USB connection mode**.

## Recorder




With the Recorder application, you can record voice memos and telephone conversations. You cannot use the recorder when a data call or GPRS connection is active.

Select **Menu > Media > Recorder**.

To record a sound clip, select .

To stop recording a sound clip, select (image) .

To listen to the sound clip, select (image) .

To select the recording quality or where you want to save your sound clips, select **Options > Settings**.

Recorded sound clips are saved to the Sound Clips folder in Gallery.

To record a telephone conversation, open recorder during a voice call, then select (image). Both parties hear a tone every five seconds during recording.

## Share online



### About Share Online

With Share Online (network service), you can post your images, video clips, and sound clips from your device to compatible online sharing services, such as albums and blogs. You can also view and send comments about the posts in these services and download content to your Vertu phone.

The supported content types and the availability of the Share Online service may vary.

### Subscribe to services

Select **Menu > Media > Share online**.

To subscribe to an online sharing service, go to the service provider's website, then check that your device is compatible with the service. Create an account as instructed on the website. You receive a user name and password needed to set up your device with the account.





To activate a service:

1. Open the Share Online application in your device, then select a service and **Options > Activate**.
2. Allow the device to create a network connection. If you are prompted for an Internet access point, select one in the list.
3. Sign in to your account as instructed on the service provider's website.

For availability and third-party service and data transfer costs, contact your service provider or the relevant third party.

### Manage your accounts

- To view your accounts, select **Options > Settings > My accounts**
- To create a new account, select **Options > Add new account**.
- To change your user name or password for an account, select the account and **Options > Open**.
- To set the account as the default when sending posts from your device, select **Options > Set as default**.
- To remove an account, select the account and **Options > Delete**.

### Create a post

Select **Menu > Media > Share online**.

To post media files to a service, go to a service, then select **Options > New upload**. If the online sharing service provides channels for posting files, select the desired channel.

To add an image, video clip, or sound clip to the post, select **Options > Insert**.

Enter a title or description for the post, if available.

To add tags to the post, select **Tags**.

To enable the posting of location information contained in the file, select **Location**.

To send the post to the service, select **Options > Upload**.


### Post files from Photos

You can post your files from Photos to an online sharing service.

1. Select **Menu > Media > Gallery > Images** and the files you want to post.
2. Select **Options > Send > Upload** and the desired account.
3. Edit your post as required.
4. Select **Options > Upload**.

### One-Click Upload

One-Click Upload lets you post images to an online sharing service immediately after capturing them.

To use One-Click Upload, capture an image with your device camera, then select the online sharing icon in the toolbar .

### Tag list

Tags describe the content of the post and help viewers find content in online sharing services.

Select **Menu > Media > Share online**.

- To view the list of available tags when creating a post, select **Tags**.
- To add tags to your post, select a tag in the list, then select Done.
- To add several tags to the post, select each tag and **Options > Mark/Unmark > Mark**.
- To search for tags, enter the search text into the search field.
- To add a tag to the tag list, select **Options > New tag**.

### Manage posts in Outbox

Outbox shows the posts you are currently uploading, posts that have failed to upload, and the posts you have sent.

Select **Menu > Media > Share online**.

- To open Outbox, select **Outbox > Options > Open**.
- To start uploading a post, select the post and **Options > Upload now**.
- To cancel uploading a post, select the post and **Options > Cancel**.
- To delete a post, select the post and **Options > Delete**.

### View service content

Select **Menu > Media > Share online**.

- To view the content of a service, select the service and **Options > Open**.
- To open a feed, select the feed. To open the feed in the browser, select the service provider's website.
- To view comments related to a file, select the file and **Options > View comments**.
- To view a file in full screen mode, select the file.
- To update a feed, select the feed and **Options > Update now**.
- If you see an interesting file and want to download the entire feed to your device, select the file and **Options > Subscribe to contact**.



# Media

## Service provider settings

Select **Menu > Media > Share online**.

To view the list of service providers, select **Options > Settings > Service providers**.

To check the details of a service, select the service in the list. To delete the selected service, select **Options > Delete**.

## Edit account settings

Select **Menu > Media > Share online**.

- To edit your accounts, select **Options > Settings > My accounts** and an account.
- To change the user name for the account, select User Name.
- To change the password for an account, select Password.
- To change the account name, select Account Name.
- To set the size of images that you post, select **Upload image size > Original**, Medium (1024 x 768 pixels) or Small (640 x 480 pixels).

## Edit advanced settings

Select **Menu > Media > Share online**.

- To edit the advanced settings, select **Options > Settings > Advanced**.
- To only use a wireless LAN (WLAN) connection for sharing, select **Use cellular > Disabled**. To allow a packet data connection, select **Enabled**.
- To allow sharing and downloading items while outside your home network, select **Allow roaming > Enabled**.
- To download new items from the service automatically, select **Download interval** and the download interval. To download items manually, select Manual.

## Data counters

Select **Menu > Media > Share online**.

To check the amount of data you have uploaded and downloaded, select **Options > Settings > Data transferred**.

To reset the counters, select **Options > Clear sent**, **Clear received**, or **Clear all**.

## RealPlayer



Select **Menu > Media > RealPlayer**.

RealPlayer plays video and sound clips that are stored on your device, transferred from an email message or a compatible computer, or streamed to your device over the Web. Supported file formats include MPEG-4, MP4 (not streaming), 3GP, RV, RA, AMR, and Midi. RealPlayer does not necessarily support all variations of a media file format.

## Play video clips and stream links

- To play a video clip, select Video Clips and a clip.
- To stream content over the air (network service), select Streaming Links and a link. RealPlayer recognizes two kinds of links: an rtsp:// URL and an http:// URL that points to a RAM file. Before the content begins streaming, your device must connect to a website and buffer the content. If a network connection problem causes a playback error, RealPlayer automatically attempts to reconnect to the Internet access point.
- To download video clips from the Web, select Download Videos.
- To list recently played files, in the application main view, select Recently Played.
- To adjust the volume during playback, use the volume keys.

To fast-forward during playback, scroll right and hold. To rewind during play, scroll left and hold. To stop the playback or streaming, select Stop. If buffering or the connection to the streaming site is interrupted, the playback of the clip stops and the clip rewinds to the beginning. To view the video clip in normal screen mode, select **Options > Continue in normal scr.**

## View information about a media clip

To view the properties of a video or sound clip or Web link, select **Options > Clip details**. Information may include, for example, the bitrate or Internet link of a streaming file.

## RealPlayer settings

Select **Menu > Media > RealPlayer**.

You may receive RealPlayer settings in a message from your service provider.

To define the settings manually, select **Options > Settings > Video** or **Streaming**.



## Video center



The video center helps you manage the videos on your phone.

Select **Menu > Media > Video center**.

- Select **Last watched** to view the recent videos watched.
- Select **My videos** to view all the videos on your phone.
- Select **Video feeds** to view the feeds.
- Select **Add new services** to add services from the Ovi Store.

You can change the setting by selecting **Menu > Media > Video center > Options**.

Select Parental Control to set a parental lock. You can set which memory in the phone to save videos to and whether to view videos as thumbnails. You can also edit the connection settings.



## Welcome to Maps

Maps shows you what's nearby, helps you plan your route, and guides you to where you want to go:

- Find cities, streets, and services.
- Find your way with turn-by-turn directions.
- Synchronize your favorite locations and routes between your mobile device and the Ovi Maps Internet service.
- Check weather forecasts and other local information, if available.

Some services may not be available in all countries and may be provided only in selected languages. The services may be network dependent. For more information, contact your network service provider.



**WARNING:** Almost all digital cartography is inaccurate and incomplete to some extent. Never rely solely on the cartography that you download for use in this device.



**NOTE:** Using the service or downloading content may involve the transfer of large amounts of data, which may result in data traffic costs.

## My position

### View your location and the map

See your current location on the map and browse maps of different cities and countries.

Select **Menu > Maps** and **My position**.



marks your current position, if available.



indicates your last known position, if your current position is not available.

If only cell-ID-based positioning is available, a red halo around the positioning icon indicates the general area you might be in. In densely populated areas, the accuracy of the estimate increases, and the red halo is smaller than in lightly populated areas.

### Move around the map

Use the scroll keys. By default, the map is oriented northward.

### View your current or last known location

Press 0.

If you browse to an area not covered by the maps stored on your device and you have an active data connection, new maps are automatically downloaded.

Map coverage varies by country and region.



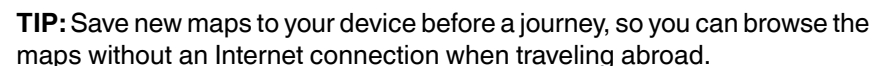
## Change the look of the map

1. Select **Menu > Maps** and **My position**.
2. Press 1, then select from the following:

3. To change between 2D and 3D views, press 3.

Normally, maps are preloaded onto the SD card (F drive). However, if you need to download or update maps, use the following procedure:

- To avoid mobile data transfer costs, download the latest maps and voice guidance files to your computer using the Ovi Suite application, then transfer and save them to your phone.
- To download and install Ovi Suite onto your compatible computer, either go to [www.ovi.com](http://www.ovi.com) or install it from the SD card supplied with your phone. Refer to “Install Ovi Suite” on page 90 for further help.
- To make sure your device does not use an Internet connection, in the main menu, select **Options > Settings > Internet > Connection > Offline**.

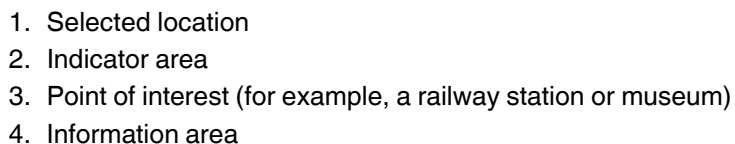


## Using the compass

Your Vertu phone contains a compass. When activated, both the compass arrow and map rotate automatically in the direction the top of your phone is pointing to.

Select **Menu > Maps** and **My position**.

The compass is active when there is a green outline. If the compass needs calibration, the outline of the compass is red or yellow. Note that the function of the compass depends on the GPS position being established.





# Maps

The compass has limited accuracy. Electromagnetic fields, metal objects, or other external circumstances may also affect the accuracy of the compass. The compass should always be properly calibrated.

## To calibrate the compass

Rotate the device around all axes in a continuous movement until the outline of the compass turns green.

## About positioning methods

Maps displays your location using GPS, A-GPS, WLAN, or cell-ID-based positioning. The Global Positioning System (GPS) is a satellite-based navigation system used for calculating your location. Assisted GPS (A-GPS) is a network service that sends you GPS data, improving the speed and accuracy of the positioning.

Wireless local area network (WLAN) positioning improves position accuracy when GPS signals are not available, especially when you are indoors or between tall buildings.

With cell-ID-based positioning, the position is determined through the antenna tower your mobile device is currently connected to.

When you use Maps for the first time, you are prompted to set the Internet access point to use for downloading map information, using A-GPS, or connecting to a WLAN.

The availability and quality of GPS signals may be affected by your location, satellite positions, buildings, natural obstacles, weather conditions, and adjustments to GPS satellites made by the United States government. GPS signals may not be available inside buildings or underground.



**WARNING:** Do not use GPS for precise location measurement, and never rely solely on the location information provided by GPS and cellular networks.



**NOTE:** Using WLAN may be restricted in some countries. For example, in France, you are only allowed to use WLAN indoors. For more information, contact your local authorities.

## Find places

### Find a location

Maps helps you find specific locations and businesses.

Select **Menu > Maps** and **Search**.

1. Enter search words, such as a street address or zip code. To clear the search field, select **Clear**.
2. Select **Go**.
3. In the list of proposed matches, go to the desired item.
  - To display the location on the map, select **Map**.
  - To view the other locations in the search results list on the map, scroll up or down.

<b>List</b>	Return to the list of proposed matches.
<b>Browse categories</b>	To search for different types of nearby places, select a category, such as shopping, accommodation, or transport.

If no search results are found, make sure you spelled your search terms correctly. Problems with your Internet connection may also affect results when searching online.

- To avoid data transfer costs, you can also get search results without an active Internet connection if you have maps of the searched area stored on your device.

### View location details

- To view more information about a specific location or place, such as a hotel or restaurant, if available:  
Select **Menu > Maps** and **My position**.
- To view the details of a place:  
Select a place, press the **Middle Select** key, then choose **Show details**.



## Favorites

### Save places and routes

Save addresses, places of interest, and routes, so they can be quickly used later:  
Select **Menu > Maps**.

To save a place:

1. Select **My position**.
2. Go to the location. To search for an address or place, select **Search**.
3. Press the **Middle Select** key.
4. Select **Save place**.

To save a route:

1. Select **My position**.
2. Go to the location. To search for an address or place, select **Search**.
3. To add another route point, select the **Middle Select** key > **Add to route**.
4. Select **Add new route point** and the appropriate option.
5. Select **Show route > Options > Save route**.

### View your saved places and routes

Select **Favorites > Places** or **Routes**.

### View and organize places or routes

Use your Favorites to quickly access the places and routes you have saved.  
Group the places and routes into a collection, for example, when planning a trip.  
Select **Menu > Maps** and **Favorites**.

To view a saved place on the map:

1. Select **Places**.
2. Go to the place.
3. Select **Map**.
4. To return to the list of saved places, select **List**.

To create a collection:

Select **Create new collection**, then enter a collection name.

To add a saved place to a collection:

1. Select **Places** and the place.
2. Select **Organize collections**.
3. Select **New collection** or an existing collection.

If you need to delete places or routes or add a route to a collection, go to the Ovi Maps Internet service at [www.ovi.com](http://www.ovi.com).

### Send places to your friends

When you want to share place information with your friends, you can send the details directly to their devices:

1. Select **Menu > Maps** and **My position**.
2. Select a location on the map, press the **Middle Select** key, then select **Send**.
3. Choose the message type and recipient, then send the message.

### Synchronize your Favorites

Plan a trip on your computer on the Ovi Maps website, then synchronize the saved places, routes, and collections with your mobile device, so you can access the plan on the go.

To synchronize places, routes, and collections between your mobile device and the Ovi Maps Internet service, you need a Nokia account. If you do not have one, select **Maps > Options > Account > Nokia account > Create new account**.

- To synchronize saved places, routes, and collections, select **Favorites > Synchronize with Ovi**. If you do not have a Nokia account, you are prompted to create one.
- To set the device to synchronize Favorites automatically, select **Options > Settings > Synchronization > Change > At start-up and shutd..**

Synchronization requires an active Internet connection and may involve the transmission of large amounts of data through your service provider's network.  
For information about data transmission charges, contact your service provider.

To use the Ovi Maps Internet service, go to [www.ovi.com](http://www.ovi.com).

# Maps



## Share location

Publish your current location to Facebook, together with text and a picture. Your Facebook friends can see your location on a map.

To share your location, you need a Nokia account and a Facebook account.

1. Select **Menu > Maps** and **Share loc.**
2. Sign in to your Nokia account, or, if you do not have one, select **Create new account.**
3. Sign in to your Facebook account.
4. Select your current location.
5. Enter your status update.
6. To attach a picture to your post, select Add a Photo.
7. Select Share Location.

To manage your Facebook account:

In the main view, select **Options > Account > Share location settings > Facebook.**

Sharing your location and viewing the location of others requires an Internet connection. This may involve the transmission of large amounts of data and related data traffic costs.

The Facebook terms of use apply to sharing your location on Facebook. Familiarize yourself with the Facebook terms of use and privacy practices.

Before sharing your location with others, always consider carefully who you are sharing it with. Check the privacy settings of the social networking service you are using, as you might be sharing your location with a large group of people.

## Drive and Walk

### Get voice guidance

Voice guidance, if available in your language, helps you find your way to a destination, leaving you free to enjoy the journey.

Select **Menu > Maps** and **Drive or Walk.**

When you use drive or walk navigation for the first time, you are asked to select the voice guidance language and to download the appropriate files.

If you select a language that includes street names, the street names are also said aloud. Voice guidance may not be available in your language.

To change the voice guidance language:

Select **Maps > Options > Settings > Navigation > Drive guidance or Walk guidance** and the appropriate option.

To deactivate voice guidance:

Select **Maps > Options > Settings > Navigation > Drive guidance or Walk guidance** and **None.**

To repeat the voice guidance for car navigation:

In the navigation view, select **Options > Repeat.**

To adjust the volume of the voice guidance for car navigation:

In the navigation view, select **Options > Volume.**

### Drive to your destination

When you need turn-by-turn directions while driving, Maps helps you get to your destination.

Select **Menu > Maps** and **Drive.**

To drive to a destination:

Select **Set destination** and the appropriate option.

To drive to your home:

Select **Drive home.**





When you select Drive Home or Walk Home for the first time, you are prompted to define your home location. To later change the home location, do the following:

1. In the main view, select **Options > Settings > Navigation > Home location > Change > Redefine**.
2. Select the appropriate option.



**TIP:** To drive without a set destination, select **Map**. Your location is displayed in the center of the map as you move.

To change views during navigation:

- Press the scroll key, then select **2D view**, **3D view**, **Arrow view**, or **Route overview**.
- Obey all local laws. Always keep your hands free to operate the vehicle while driving. Your first consideration while driving should be road safety.

## Navigation view



1. Route
2. Your location and direction
3. Compass
4. Information bar (speed, distance, time)

## Get traffic and safety information

Enhance your driving experience with real-time information about traffic events, lane assistance, and speed limit warnings, if available in your country or region.

Select **Menu > Maps and Drive**.

To view traffic events on the map:

During drive navigation, select **Options > Traffic info**. The events are displayed as triangles and lines.

To update traffic information:

Select **Options > Traffic info > Update traffic info**.

To avoid traffic events:

When planning a route, you can set the device to avoid traffic events, such as traffic jams or roadwork.

Select **Maps > Options > Settings > Navigation > Reroute due to traffic**.

The location of speed cameras may be shown on your route during navigation, if this feature is enabled. Some jurisdictions prohibit or regulate the use of speed camera location data. Nokia is not responsible for the accuracy or consequences of using speed camera location data.

## Walk to your destination

When you need directions to follow a route on foot, Maps guides you through squares, parks, pedestrian zones, and even shopping malls.

Select **Menu > Maps and Walk**.

To walk to a destination:

Select **Set destination** and the appropriate option.

To walk to your home:

Select **Walk home**.

# Maps



When you select Drive Home or Walk Home for the first time, you are prompted to define your home location. To later change the home location, do the following:

1. In the main view, select **Options > Settings > Navigation > Home location > Change > Redefine**.
2. Select the appropriate option.



**TIP:** To walk without a set destination, select **Map**. Your location is displayed in the center of the map as you move.

## Plan a route

Plan your journey, create your route, and view it on the map before setting off. Select **Menu > Maps** and **My position**.

To create a route:

1. Go to your starting point.
2. Press the **Middle Select** key, then select **Add to route**.
3. To add another route point, select **Add new route point** and the appropriate option.

To change the order of the route points:

1. Go to a route point.
2. Press the **Middle Select** key, then select **Move**.
3. Go to the place where you want to move the route point to, then select OK.

To edit the location of a route point:

Go to the route point, press the **Middle Select** key, then select **Edit** and the appropriate option.

To view the route on the map:

Select **Show route**.

To navigate to the destination:

Select **Show route > Options > Start driving** or **Start walking**.

To change the settings for a route:

The route settings affect the navigation guidance and the way the route is displayed on the map.

1. In the route planner view, open the Settings tab. To get to the route planner view from the navigation view, select **Options > Route points** or **Route point list**.
2. Set the transportation mode to **Drive** or **Walk**. If you select Walk, one-way streets are regarded as normal streets, and walkways and through routes, such as parks and shopping malls, can be used.
3. Select the desired option.

To select the walking mode:

Select **Settings > Walk > Preferred route > Streets** or **Straight line**. Straight Line is useful on off-road terrain, as it indicates the walking direction.

To use the faster or shorter driving route:

Open the **Settings** tab, then select **Drive > Route selection > Faster route** or **Shorter route**.

To use the optimized driving route:

Open the **Settings** tab, then select **Drive > Route selection > Optimized**. The optimized driving route combines the advantages of both the shorter and faster routes.

You can also choose to allow or avoid using, for example, expressways, toll roads, or ferries.



## Maps shortcuts

### General shortcuts

0	To return to your current location
1	To change the map type
2 or 8	To tilt the map
4 or 6	To rotate the map
5	To return the map to the north up position

### Pedestrian navigation shortcuts

2	To save a location
3	To search for locations by category
6	To adjust the volume of the pedestrian navigation guidance
7	To view the list of route points
8	To adjust the map for night use
9	To view the dashboard

### Car navigation shortcuts

1	To adjust the map for day or night use
2	To save the current location
3	To search for locations by category
4	To repeat the voice guidance
5	To find a different route
6	To adjust the voice guidance volume
7	To add a stopover to the route
8	To view traffic information
9	To view the dashboard

## Map Settings

Select **Menu** > **Maps** > **Options** > **Settings**.

<b>Internet</b>	<b>Connection</b>	Options are Online or Offline.
	<b>Network destination</b>	Options are Internet, Multimedia Msg, or WAP Services.
	<b>Roaming warning</b>	Options are On or Off.

<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Drive guidance</b>	Select language and voice type. You may be prompted to download the guidance.
	<b>Walk guidance</b>	Select language or beeps and vibrations. You may be prompted to download the guidance.
	<b>Home location</b>	Define your home location.
	<b>Backlight</b>	Options are Always On, Optimized, and System Default.
	<b>Automatic zoom</b>	Options are On or Off.
	<b>Traffic info update</b>	Options are Manual or at selected times ranging from 5 to 40 minutes.
	<b>Reroute due to traffic</b>	Options are Automatic or Always Ask.
	<b>Time indicator</b>	Options are Travel Time or Time of Arrival.
	<b>Speed limit warner</b>	Options are On or Off. If On, input speed limit for <80 km/hr and speed limit for >80 km/hr.
	<b>Safety spot warner</b>	Options are On, Off, and Only Visual.
	<b>Maps improvement</b>	Options are On or Off.

# Maps



<b>Route</b>	<b>Transport mode</b>	Options are Drive or Walk.
	<b>Route selection</b>	Options are Faster Route, Optimized, or Shorter Route.
	<b>Expressway</b>	Options are Yes or No.
	<b>Tunnel</b>	Options are Yes or No.
	<b>Ferry</b>	Options are Yes or No.
	<b>Toll roads</b>	Options are Yes or No.
	<b>Unpaved roads</b>	Options are Yes or No.
	<b>Train ferry</b>	Options are Yes or No.

<b>Map</b>	<b>Categories</b>	Select the features to display, such as Cinema, Museum, Parking, and Shops. Over 25 categories exist.
	<b>Colors</b>	Select Day mode, Night mode, or Automatic.
	<b>Memory to be used</b>	Options are E: Mass Memory or F: Memory Card.
	<b>Maximum memory use</b>	Select a value between 10% and 90%
	<b>System of measurement</b>	Options are Imperial or Metric.

<b>Synchronization</b>	<b>Synchronization</b>	Options are <b>Manual</b> , and <b>At start-up and shutd.</b>
------------------------	------------------------	---



## Positioning (GPS)

You can use applications, such as GPS Data, to find your location or measure distances and coordinates. These applications require a GPS signal.

Select **Menu > Applications > GPS**.

### About GPS

The GPS coordinates are expressed using the international WGS-84 coordinate system. The availability of the coordinates may vary by region.

The Global Positioning System (GPS) is operated by the United States government, which is solely responsible for its accuracy and maintenance. The accuracy of location data can be affected by adjustments to GPS satellites made by the United States government and is subject to change according to the United States Department of Defense civil GPS policy and the Federal Radionavigation Plan. Accuracy can also be affected by poor satellite geometry. The availability and quality of GPS signals may be affected by your location, buildings, natural obstacles, and weather conditions. GPS signals may not be available inside buildings or underground and may be impaired by materials such as concrete and metal.

GPS should not be used for precise location measurement, and you should never rely solely on location data from the GPS receiver and cellular radio networks for positioning or navigation.

The trip meter has limited accuracy, and rounding errors may occur. Accuracy can also be affected by the availability and quality of GPS signals.

Different positioning methods can be enabled or disabled in positioning settings.

### Assisted GPS (A-GPS)

Your device also supports assisted GPS (A-GPS).

A-GPS requires network support.

Assisted GPS (A-GPS) is used to retrieve assistance data over a packet data connection, which assists in calculating the coordinates of your current location when your device is receiving signals from satellites.

When you activate A-GPS, your device receives useful satellite information from an assistance data server over the cellular network. With the help of assisted data, your device can obtain the GPS position faster.

Your device is preconfigured to use the Nokia A-GPS service if no service-provider-specific A-GPS settings are available. The assistance data is retrieved from the Nokia A-GPS service server only when needed.

To disable the A-GPS service, select **Menu > Applications > GPS > GPS data and Options > Positioning settings > Positioning methods > Assisted GPS > Disable**.

You must have an Internet access point defined in the device to retrieve assistance data from the Nokia A-GPS service over a packet data connection. The access point for A-GPS can be defined in positioning settings. A wireless LAN (WLAN) access point cannot be used for this service.

Only a packet data Internet access point can be used. Your device asks you to select the Internet access point when GPS is used for the first time.

### Hold your device correctly

When using the GPS receiver, make sure you do not cover the antenna with your hand. The antenna for the GPS receiver is in the top part of your phone.

Establishing a GPS connection may take a couple of seconds to several minutes.

Establishing a GPS connection in a vehicle may take longer.

The GPS receiver draws its power from the device battery. Using the GPS receiver may drain the battery faster.



# Positioning

## Tips on creating a GPS connection

If your device cannot find the satellite signal, consider the following:

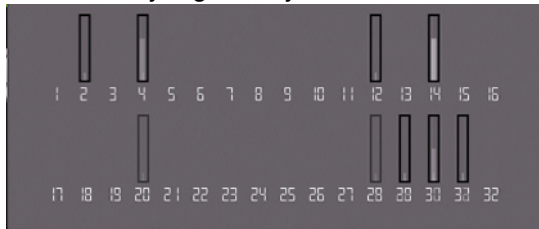
- If you are indoors, go outdoors to receive a better signal.
- If you are outdoors, move to a more open space.
- Ensure that your hand does not cover the GPS antenna of your device.
- Poor weather conditions may affect signal strength.
- Some vehicles have tinted windows, which may block the satellite signals.

### Check satellite signal status

To check how many satellites your device has found and whether your device is receiving satellite signals, select **Menu > Applications > GPS > GPS data and Options > Satellite status**.

If your device has found satellites, a bar for each satellite is displayed in the satellite information view. The longer the bar, the stronger the satellite signal. When your device has received enough data from the satellite signal to calculate the coordinates of your location, the bar color changes.

Initially, your device must receive signals from at least four satellites to be able to calculate the coordinates of your location. When the initial calculation has been made, it may be possible to continue calculating the coordinates of your location with three satellites. However, the accuracy is generally better when more satellites are found.



## Position requests

You may receive a request from a network service to receive your position information. Service providers may offer information about local issues, such as weather and traffic conditions, based on the location of your device. When you receive a position request, the service making the request is displayed. Select **Accept** to allow your position information to be sent or **Reject** to deny the request.

## Landmarks



With Landmarks, you can save the position information of specific locations in your device. You can sort the saved locations into different categories, such as business, and add other information to them, such as addresses. You can use your saved landmarks in compatible applications, such as GPS Data.

Select **Menu > Applications > GPS > Landmarks**.

The GPS coordinates are expressed using the international WGS-84 coordinate system.

Select **Options**, then choose from the following:

- **New landmark** — Create a new landmark. To make a positioning request for your current location, select **Current position**. To select the location using the map, select **Select from map**. To enter the position information manually, select **Enter manually**.
- **Edit** — Edit or add information to a saved landmark (for example, a street address).
- **Add to category**— Add a landmark to a category in Landmarks. Select each category you want to add the landmark to.
- **Send** — Send one or several landmarks to a compatible device. Your received landmarks are placed in the Inbox folder in Messaging.

You can sort your landmarks into preset categories, or you can create new categories. To edit and create new landmark categories, open the **Categories** tab, then select **Options > Edit categories**.



## GPS Data



Select **Menu > Applications > GPS > GPS data**.

GPS Data is designed to provide route guidance information to a selected destination, position information about your current location, and travel information, such as the approximate distance to the destination and the approximate duration of travel.

GPS coordinates are expressed in degrees and decimal degrees format using the international WGS-84 coordinate system.

To use GPS Data, your device's GPS receiver must initially receive position information from at least four satellites to calculate the coordinates of your location.

When the initial calculation has been made, it may be possible to continue calculating the coordinates of your location with three satellites. However, the accuracy is generally better when more satellites are found.

## Route guidance

Select **Menu > Applications > GPS > GPS data > Navigation**.

Start the route guidance outdoors. If started indoors, the GPS receiver may not receive the necessary information from the satellites.

Route guidance uses a rotating compass on the device display. A red ball shows the direction to the destination, and the approximate distance to it is shown inside the compass ring.

Route guidance is designed to show the straightest route and the shortest distance to the destination, measured in a straight line. Any obstacles on the route, such as buildings and natural obstacles, are ignored. Differences in altitude are not taken into account when calculating the distance. Route guidance is active only when you move.

To set your trip destination, select **Options > Set destination** and a landmark as the destination, or enter the latitude and longitude coordinates.

To clear the destination set for your trip, select **Stop navigation**.

## Retrieve position information

Select **Menu > Applications > GPS > GPS data > Position**.

In the position view, you can view the position information of your current location. An estimate of the accuracy of the location is displayed.

To save your current location as a landmark, select **Options > Save position**.

Landmarks are saved locations with additional information; they can be used in other compatible applications and transferred between compatible devices.

## Trip meter

Select **Menu > Applications > GPS > GPS data > Trip distance**.

The trip meter has limited accuracy, and rounding errors may occur. Accuracy can also be affected by the availability and quality of GPS signals. To turn trip distance calculation on or off, select **Options > Start** or **Stop**. The calculated values remain on the display.

Use this feature outdoors to receive a better GPS signal.

To set the trip distance and time and average and maximum speeds to zero, and to start a new calculation, select **Options > Reset**. To set the trip meter and total time to zero, select **Restart**.

## Positioning settings



Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Positioning**.

To use a specific positioning method to detect the location of your device, select

### Positioning methods

Select from the following:

- **Integrated GPS** — Use the integrated GPS receiver of your device.
- **Assisted GPS** — Use assisted GPS (A-GPS) to receive assistance data from an assistance data server.
- **Bluetooth GPS** — Use a compatible external GPS receiver with Bluetooth connectivity.
- **Network based** — Use information from the cellular network (network service).



# Positioning



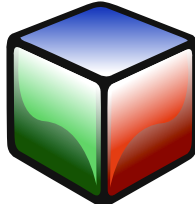
## Positioning server

To define an access point and positioning server for network-assisted positioning methods, such as assisted GPS or network-based positioning, select **Positioning server**. The positioning server may be preset by your positioning (GPS) service provider, and you may not be able to edit the settings.

## Notation preferences

To select which measurement system you want to use for speeds and distances, select **Measurement system > Metric or Imperial**.

To define in which format the coordinate information is displayed in your device, select **Coordinate format** and the desired format.



## Application Manager

With Application Manager, you can view detailed information about installed applications, remove applications, install pending applications, install from a download source, and define installation settings.

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > App mgr.**

### Security and data management

You can install two types of applications and software onto your device:

- JME applications based on Java technology with the .jad or .jar file extensions.
- Other applications and software suitable for the Symbian operating system with the .sis or .sisx file extensions.

Only software that is compatible with your device can be installed.

### Install applications

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > App mgr.**

You can transfer installation files to your device using a number of methods. Select **Download apps.** in **App mgr.** or **Download** in the Vertu menu, download files from a compatible computer or while browsing, receive files in a multimedia message as an email attachment, or use other connection methods, such as Bluetooth, to transfers files. You can also use Ovi Suite to install an application onto your device.

Icons in Application Manager indicate the following:

 SIS or SISX application

Java application

 Widgets



**IMPORTANT:** Only install and use applications and other software from trusted sources, such as applications that are Symbian Signed or have passed Java Verified™ testing.

Before installation, note the following:

- To view the application type, version number, and supplier or manufacturer, select **Options > View details.**
- To display the application security certificate information, select **Details: > Certificates: > View details.**
- If you install a file that contains an update or repair to an existing application, you can only restore the original application if you have the original installation file or a full backup copy of the deleted software package. To restore the original application, uninstall the application, then install the application again from the original installation file or the backup copy.

To install software or an application:

1. To locate an installation file, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > App mgr. > Installation files.**  
Alternatively, search for installation files using File Manager, or select **Messaging > Inbox**, then open a message that contains an installation file.
2. In Application Manager, select **Options > Install.** In other applications, select the installation file to start the installation.

During installation, the device shows information about installation progress. If you install an application without a digital signature or certification, the device displays a warning. Continue installation only if you are sure of the origin and contents of the application.

- To open an installed application, locate the application in the menu, then select the application.
- To see which software packages are installed or removed and when, select **Options > View log.**

If there is no access point defined for the application, you are asked to select one. When you download the JAR file, you may need to enter a user name and password to access the server. You can get these from the application supplier or developer.



**IMPORTANT:** Your device can only support one antivirus application. Having more than one application with antivirus functionality could affect performance and operation or cause the device to stop functioning.



# Application Manager

After you install applications to a compatible memory card, installation files (.sis, .sisx) remain in the device memory. The files may use large amounts of memory and prevent you from storing other files. To free up memory space, use Ovi Suite to back up installation files to a compatible PC, then use the file manager to remove the installation files from the device memory. If the SIS file is a message attachment, delete the message from the Messaging inbox.

## Remove applications and software

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > App mgr. > Installed apps**.

Scroll to a software package, then select **Options > Uninstall**. Select **Yes** to confirm. You can only reinstall a deleted application if you have the original software package or a full backup of it. If you remove a software package, you may no longer be able to open documents created with that software. If another software package depends on the software package that you removed, the other software package may stop working. For more information, see the documentation of the installed software package.

## Application Manager settings

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > App mgr.**

Select **Options > Settings**, then choose from the following:

- **Software installation** — Select whether Symbian software that has no verified digital signature can be installed.
- **Online certificate check** — Check the online certificates before installing an application.
- **Default Web address** — Set the default address used when checking online certificates.

Some Java applications may require that a message be sent or a network connection be made to a specific access point to download extra data or components.



This section describes how to personalize your phone by, for example, adjusting the various tones, background images, and screen savers.

### Profiles



Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Profiles**.

You can adjust and customize the ringtones, alert tones, and other device tones for different events, environments, or caller groups. The active profile is shown at the top of the display on the home screen. However, if the active profile is **General**, only today's date is shown.

To create a new profile, select **Options > Create new**, then define the settings.

To customize a particular profile, select a profile and **Options > Personalize**.

To change to a particular profile, select a profile and **Options > Activate**.

The **Offline** profile prevents your device from accidentally switching on, sending or receiving messages, or using wireless LAN, Bluetooth connectivity, GPS, or FM radio; it also closes any Internet connection that may be in operation when the profile is selected.

The **Offline** profile does not prevent you from establishing a wireless LAN or Bluetooth connection at a later time or from restarting the GPS or FM radio, so comply with any applicable safety requirements when establishing and using these features.

To set the profile to be active until a certain time within the next 24 hours, scroll to the profile, select **Options > Timed**, then set the time. When the time expires, the profile changes back to the previously active untimed profile. When the profile is timed, a timer icon is displayed on the home screen. The **Offline** profile cannot be timed.

To delete a profile that you created, select **Options > Delete profile**. You cannot delete the predefined profiles.

### Select ringtones

To set a ringtone for a profile, select **Options > Personalize > Ringtone**.

Select a ringtone in the list, or select **Download Sounds** to open a bookmark folder containing a list of bookmarks for downloading ringtones using the browser. Any downloaded tones are saved to **Gallery**.

To play the ringtone for a selected contact group only, select **Options > Personalize > Alert for**, then select the desired group. Phone calls coming from outside that group have a silent alert.

To change the message tone, select **Options > Personalize > Message alert tone**.

### Customize profiles

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Profiles**.

Select **Options > Personalize**, then choose from the following:

- **Ringtone** — Select a ringtone in the list, or select **Download Sounds** to open a bookmark folder containing a list of bookmarks for downloading ringtones using the browser. If you have two alternate phone lines in use, you can specify a ringtone for each line.
- **Video call tone** — Select a ringtone for video calls.
- **Say caller's name** — When you select this option and someone in your contacts list calls you, the device sounds a ringtone that is a combination of the spoken name of the contact and the selected ringtone.
- **Ringling type** — Select how you want the ringtone to alert you.
- **Ringling volume** — Select the volume of the ringtone.
- **Message alert tone** — Select a tone for received text messages.
- **Email alert tone** — Select a tone for received email messages.
- **Vibrating alert** — Set the device to vibrate when you receive a call or message.
- **Keypad tones** — Select the volume of the keypad tones.
- **Warning tones** — Deactivate the warning tones. This setting also affects the tones of some games and Java™ applications.
- **Alert for** — Set the device to ring only when receiving calls from phone numbers that belong to a selected contact group. Phone calls coming from outside that group have a silent alert.
- **Profile name** — You can give a name to a new profile or rename an existing profile. The **General** and **Offline** profiles cannot be renamed.

# Personal Settings



## Personalize the home screen



You can define two separate home screens for different purposes, for example, one screen to show your business email and notifications and another to show your personal email. This way, you do not have to see business-related messages outside office hours.

To change from one home screen to another, go to **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Modes > Current mode**, then select either **Business** or **Personal**.

To define which items you want on your home screens, and to set the appearance of each home screen, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Modes**.

- To change the name of the current home screen, select **Options > Rename mode**.
- To select which applications and notifications you want to display on the home screen, select **Home screen applications > Options > Change**. Check the applications you want to see, and uncheck the applications you do not want to use.
- To change the background image of the home screen currently in use, select **Wallpaper**.

To select which email accounts to display in the notification area of your **Business** and **Personal** home screens:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Modes > Current mode**, then select **Business**.
2. Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Modes > Email notifications** and choose your primary and secondary email accounts.
3. Repeat the process, but select your **Personal** home screen.

To define your default mailbox

- To set up your default mailbox, select **Messaging > Options > Settings > Email > Default mailbox**.

For further information about personalizing your email accounts, refer to “Email account preferences” on page 67.

There are a number of ways to set your preferences in the **Home screen**:

- To set up the Information area, refer to “Setting up the Information area on the home screen” on page 24.
- To set up your clock functions and alarms, refer to “Clock alarms and appointments” on page 25.
- To change the software language, refer to “QWERTY keyboard” on page 19.

## Change the display theme



Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Themes**.

Select from the following:

- **General** — Change the theme used in all applications.
- **Standby** — Change the theme used on the home screen.
- **Wallpaper** — Change the background image of the home screen.
- **Call image** — Change the image displayed during calls.
- **Audio themes** — Set sounds for various events.

To activate or deactivate the theme effects, select **General > Options > Theme effects**, then select On or Off.

Only the themes on the phone are currently available. Additional themes for download may be provided in the future at Vertu's discretion.



### Audio themes



Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Themes** and **Audio themes**.

You can set sounds for various device events. The sounds can be tones, speech, or a combination of both.

The **Active audio theme** is preset to the Vertu theme.

To set a sound for an event, select an event group and the desired event.

To use all the preset sounds in an event group, select the group and **Options > Activate sounds**.

Select **Options**, then choose from the following:

- **Play** — Play the sound before activating it.
- **Save theme** — Create a new audio theme.
- **Speech** — Select Speech to set speech as the sound for an event. Enter the desired text into the text field. The Speech option is not available if you have activated the Say Caller's Name option in the current profile.
- **Deactivate sounds** — Silence all the sounds in an event group.

### Desk stand

The **Desk stand** is an optional feature.

When using the **Desk stand**, the display can be switched on for extended periods.

The default setting is one hour.

To set up the **Desk stand** default time period, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Personalization > Desk stand**, then choose the desired time period (1–8 hours).

By default, the keypad remains unlocked, but you can manually lock it. Refer to “Security Settings” on page 32. However, the display then switches off.

## Accessories

### Accessories

The following accessories are provided with your Vertu phone:

- Batteries (2)
- Wall charger (comprising wall charger plug and data cable)
- Data cable
- AV cable
- Wired headset

For more information about additional accessories approved for use with your Vertu phone, please contact Vertu Concierge or visit [www.vertu.com](http://www.vertu.com).

For safety information on your Vertu phone and accessories, see page 6.

For care and maintenance information on your Vertu phone and accessories, see page 137.

### Battery

Your device is powered by a rechargeable battery. The battery intended for use with this device is BP-4LV (Li-ion). Vertu may make additional battery models available for this device. This device is intended to be charged using an AC-31 charger.

The full performance of a new battery is achieved only after two or three complete charge and discharge cycles.

If a battery is being used for the first time, or if the battery has not been used for a prolonged period, it may take several minutes before the charging indicator appears on the display or before any calls can be made.

Battery talk and standby times are estimates and depend on signal strength, network conditions, features used, battery age and condition, temperatures the battery is exposed to, and many other factors. The amount of time a device is used for calls affects standby time. Likewise, the amount of time the device is turned on and in standby mode affects talk time.

You can maximize battery performance by switching off certain functions, such as Bluetooth, when they are not in use.



**NOTE:** If the battery is removed from your Vertu phone for longer than an hour, you may need to reset the date and time.

You can charge and discharge the battery hundreds of times, but it will eventually wear out. When the talk and standby times are noticeably shorter than normal, replace the battery.

### Wall charger

The wall charger supplied with your Vertu phone should be appropriate for your region. However, you should always check that the electrical rating of the AC outlet is appropriate for the charger before you attempt to plug it in.

### Charging the battery

The battery for your Vertu phone requires charging at regular intervals. The battery does not have to be completely discharged before you can charge it.

The battery can be charged using the AC charger or the PC micro-USB connector.

To charge the battery using the AC charger:

1. Connect the micro-USB connector to your Vertu phone. Make sure that the connector is inserted correctly, with the connector symbol on top. The **Home** key flashes green while the phone is charging.
2. Plug the charger body into a powered AC outlet. After a few seconds, the animated battery charging indicator is displayed. A confirmation message is displayed if your Vertu phone is switched on.
3. The charging time will vary with different power sources.
4. Always charge the battery until it is fully charged. When the battery is fully charged, the animated battery charging indicator stops. If your Vertu phone is switched on, the **Battery full** message is briefly displayed.

### Vertu battery authentication guidelines

For your safety, always use original Vertu batteries. To check that you have an original Vertu battery, purchase it from a Vertu-authorized service center or dealer, and inspect the holospot label using the following steps:

1. When you look at the holospot on the label, you should see a Vertu symbol and three characters, similar to those shown below.



2. In the background, you should see the unique holospot serial number.

Successful completion of these steps does not guarantee the authenticity of the battery. If you cannot confirm authenticity, or if you have reason to believe that your Vertu battery with the holospot on the label is not an authentic Vertu battery, you should refrain from using it and take it to the nearest Vertu-authorized service center or dealer for assistance.





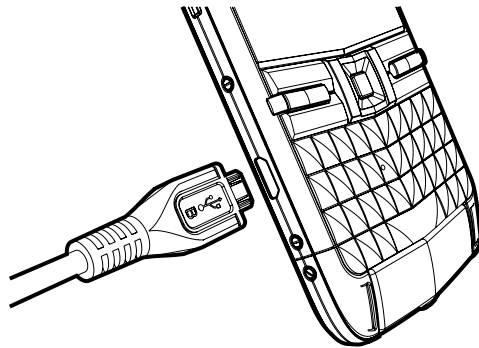
### Data cable

The micro-USB data cable allows you to transfer data between your Vertu phone and a compatible computer, for example, when you are using Vertu Ovi Suite. You can also transfer data between your Vertu phone and a compatible printer that supports PictBridge.

#### Connecting the data cable to your Vertu phone

Insert the data cable's micro-USB connector into the slot on the left side of your Vertu phone, as shown below. Make sure that the connector is inserted correctly, with the connector symbol on top.

Connect the data cable's USB connector to a USB port of the computer.



#### USB data connection options

When the USB cable is plugged into your phone, the phone starts charging and a number of USB modes are displayed. Select the appropriate mode using the Up and Down scroll keys, then press the **Middle Select** key to confirm your choice.

Connection Type	Purpose
PC Suite	For use with <b>Ovi Suite</b> on a PC. The latest version of Ovi Suite can be downloaded and installed on your PC from <a href="http://www.ovi.com">www.ovi.com</a> .
Mass storage	To transfer files between your phone and a PC using the standard file management software.
Image transfer	To transfer images between your phone and a PC using the standard image-handling software.
Media transfer	To transfer audio/video files between your phone and a PC using the standard music/video-handling software.
Connect PC to Web	To enable your PC to use the phone as a modem and connect to the Internet.

### SD card

A 32-GB SD memory card provided with your Vertu phone (F drive), which can be used for storing data, including images, videos, contacts, and notes. This card also contains the Reference Manual in PDF format in supported languages as well as additional software.

#### Copying data from the SD card

1. Connect the phone to the PC using the USB cable.
2. Select the **Mass storage** option on the phone.
3. Use the file manager on your PC to view the folders on the phone, then locate the "Vertu" folder.
4. Copy data, such as the Ovi Suite executable file or the Constellation Quest Reference Manual in PDF format, to a location on your PC.

### AV cable

The Video Out cable is used for connecting your phone to external devices.

Plug the AV cable into the 3.5-mm socket on your phone. Connect the RGB outputs to a device, such as a TV, then select the appropriate input option.

The display from your Vertu phone, as well as sound, now plays through the connected device.

# Accessories

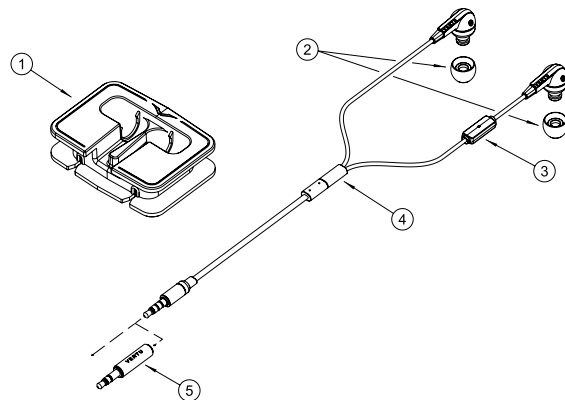


## Vertu Wired Headset

Your Constellation Quest phone comes with a stereo headset. The Vertu Wired Headset is designed for making calls and listening to music. The headset includes a microphone.

- Volume controls are contained within the phone.
- Call handling functions are located within the phone.
- All music controls are located within the phone.

Should you use the headset with a device other than your Constellation Quest, the 3.5-mm adaptor is required.



### Key

1. Cable Management
2. Ear bud covers (3 pairs: small, medium, and large)
3. Microphone
4. Vertu slider
5. 3.5-mm audio adaptor

## Common accessory settings

Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Enhancement**.

Accessory options include a **Headset** (which includes a microphone), **Headphones**, a **Wireless car kit**, and a **TV-Out** facility.

With most accessories, you can do the following:

- To set which profile is activated when you attach an accessory to your phone, select the accessory and **Default profile**.
- To set the device to answer phone calls automatically after five seconds when an accessory is attached, select **Automatic answer > On**. If the ringing type is set to **Beep once** or **Silent** in the selected profile, automatic answering is disabled.
- To illuminate the device while it is attached to an accessory, select **Lights > On**.



This chapter contains advice about prolonging the life of the battery in your phone, managing the phone's memory together with information about software upgrades.

## Prolong battery life

Many features in your device increase the demand on battery power and reduce the battery time between charges. To save battery power, consider the following:

- Features that use Bluetooth technology and running such features in the background while using other features increase the demand on battery power. Deactivate Bluetooth technology when you do not need it.
- Features that use wireless LAN (WLAN) and running such features in the background while using other features increase the demand on battery power. WLAN on your Vertu phone deactivates when you are not trying to connect, not connected to an access point, or not scanning for available networks. To further reduce battery consumption, you can specify that your device does not scan in the background for available networks, or scans less often.
- If you have set **Packet data** to **When available** and there is no packet data coverage (GPRS), the device periodically tries to establish a packet data connection. To prolong the operating time of your device, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > Connection > Packet data > When needed**.
- If the signal strength of the cellular network varies much in your area, your device must scan for the available network repeatedly. This increases the demand on battery power.
- If the network is set to dual mode in the network settings, the device searches for the 3G network. You can set the device to use only the GSM network. To use only the GSM network, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings** and **Phone > Network > Network mode > GSM**.
- The backlight of the display increases the demand on battery power. In the display settings, you can change the length of the time-out period after which the backlight is switched off. Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings** and **General > Personalization > Display > Light time-out**. To adjust the light sensor that detects lighting conditions and adjusts the display brightness, in the display settings, select **Light sensor**.

## Maintenance

- To save power, activate the power save mode. Press the **Power** key, then select **Activate power saving**. To deactivate it, press the **Power** key, then select **Deactivate power saving**. You may not be able to change the settings of certain applications when the power save mode is activated.

## Free memory

To view how much memory is available for different data types, select **Menu > Office > File mgr.**

Many features of the device use memory to store data. The device notifies you if available memory is low.

To free memory, transfer data to an alternative memory (if available) or compatible computer.

You can also remove the following data, if unnecessary or you no longer need it:

- Messages in the folders in **Messaging** and retrieved email messages from the mailbox.
- Saved Web pages.
- Contact information.
- Calendar notes.
- Applications shown in **Applications manager** that you do not need.
- Installation files (with .sis or .six file extensions) of installed applications. Back up the installation files to a compatible computer.
- Images and video clips in **Photos**.

# Maintenance

## Update software

### About software updates

Software updates may include new features and enhanced functions that were not available at the time of purchase of your device. Updating the software may also improve device performance.

To receive a notification when new software is available for your device, register with Vertu. For more information, contact **Vertu Concierge** or go to [www.vertu.com](http://www.vertu.com).



**WARNING:** If you install a software update, you cannot use the device, even to make emergency calls, until the installation is completed and the device is restarted.

- Make sure to back up data before accepting installation of an update.
- Downloading software updates may involve the transmission of large amounts of data (network service).
- Make sure that the device battery has enough power, or connect the charger before starting the update.
- After updating your device software or applications, the information in the user guide or Help related to the updated applications may no longer be up to date.

### Software updates over the air



To update the software over the air:

1. Select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Phone > SW update**.
2. With **Software update** (network service), you can check for updates for your device software or applications and download them to your device.
3. Downloading software updates may involve the transmission of large amounts of data (network service).

Make sure that the device battery has enough power, or connect the charger before starting the update.



**WARNING:** If you install a software update, you cannot use the device, even to make emergency calls, until the installation is completed and the device is restarted.

After updating your device software or applications using **Software update**, the information in the user guide or Help related to the updated applications may no longer be up to date.

Select **Options**, then choose from the following:

<b>Start update</b>	Download the available updates. To unmark specific updates that you do not want to download, select the updates in the list.
<b>Update via PC</b>	Update your device using a PC. This option replaces the Start update option when updates are only available using the Nokia Software Update PC application.
<b>View details</b>	View information on an update
<b>View update history</b>	View the status of previous updates
<b>Settings</b>	Change the settings as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Default access point</b> used for downloading updates; options are <b>Default connection</b>, <b>WAP services</b>, or <b>Internet</b>.</li><li>• <b>Auto-check for updates</b>; options are <b>On</b>, <b>Off</b>, or <b>Only in home network</b></li><li>• Connect when roaming; options are <b>Ask first</b> and <b>Conn. without asking</b>.</li></ul>
<b>Disclaimer</b>	View the license agreement



Printing

You can print documents, such as files, messages, images, or Web pages, from your device. You may not be able to print all types of documents.

To set up printers, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Printers**.

Print files

Before printing a file from an application, make sure you have configured all the settings necessary to connect your device to the printer.

Select **Options > Printing options**, then choose from the following:

<b>Print</b>	Print a document. To print to a file, select <b>Print to file</b> , then set the location for the file.
<b>Page setup</b>	You can change the paper size and orientation, define the margins, and insert a header or footer. The maximum length of the header and footer is 128 characters.
<b>Preview</b>	Preview the document before printing.
<b>Printers</b>	Select which printer to use if more than one is configured.

Printer settings

To add a new printer, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Printers > Options > Add**.

Define the following:

<b>Printer</b>	Enter a name for the printer.
<b>Driver</b>	Select a driver for the printer. Options include General and HP Mobile Printing.
<b>Bearer</b>	Select a bearer for the printer. Options include Socket/HP JetDirect, Bluetooth, LPR, and File
<b>Orientation</b>	Select the orientation: portrait or landscape.
<b>Paper size</b>	Select the paper size in the list of options.
<b>Quality mode</b>	Options are Normal, Draft, or Best.
<b>Media type</b>	Select the media type: options include Plain or Photo.

<b>Color mode</b>	Select the color mode.
<b>Printer model</b>	Select the printer model.

The available options may vary.

Printing options

Open a document, such as a file or message, then select **Options > Printing options > Print**.

Enter the following settings to print:

<b>Printer</b>	Select an available printer in the list.
<b>Print</b>	Select All Pages, Even Pages, or Odd Pages.
<b>Print range</b>	Select All Pages in Range or Defined Pages as the page range.
<b>Number of copies</b>	Enter the number of copies to print.
<b>Print to file</b>	Select to print to a file and determine the location for the file.

The available options may vary.

Image print

You can print images from your device using a printer compatible with PictBridge. You can only print images that are in the JPEG file format.

1. Connect your device to a compatible printer with a compatible data cable, then select **Image transfer** as the USB connection mode.
2. To print images in Photos, Camera, or Image Viewer, mark the images, then select **Options > To printer or kiosk**
3. A print setup wizard will open.
4. To set your device to ask the purpose of the connection each time the cable is connected, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel** and **Connectivity > USB > Ask on connection > Yes**.

Print preview

After you select the printer, the selected images are displayed using predefined layouts.

If the images do not fit on a single page, scroll up or down to display the additional pages.

# Printing



## Image print view

After you select the printer and images to print, enter the printer settings.

Select from the following:

<b>Layout</b>	Select the layout of the images.
<b>Paper size</b>	Select the paper size.
<b>Print quality</b>	Select the print quality.



Problem	Possible cause	Possible solution
Cannot switch phone on	Battery out of power.	Charge the battery (see page 134).
	Battery not installed correctly.	Ensure that the battery is inserted correctly (see page 16).
Phone switches off automatically	Battery out of power.	Charge the battery (see page 134).
Cannot charge battery	Battery not installed correctly.	Ensure that the battery is inserted correctly (see page 16).
	Charger not connected.	Ensure that the charger is connected to the phone and to a working power outlet.
	Connectors are dirty.	Clean the connectors of the charger and battery.
	Battery has worn out.	Replace the battery.
	Battery or charger is damaged.	Replace the battery or charger. Contact your dealer for assistance.
Battery loses power quickly	Bluetooth is active.	Switch off Bluetooth (see page 88).
Network not displayed	SIM card not installed correctly.	Ensure that the SIM card is inserted correctly (see page 15).
	Contacts between SIM card and phone are dirty.	Gently clean the contacts of the SIM card and phone.
	Network signal is weak.	Move clear of any obstructions that may block the signal.
	SIM card is damaged.	Contact your service provider to obtain a replacement SIM card.
Cannot make a call	You are outside of your network service area.	Connect to a different network if this is supported by your service provider (see page 44).
	Call barring is active.	Deactivate call barring (see page 42).
Cannot answer a call	Call forwarding is active	Deactivate call forwarding (see page 43).
	Call barring is active.	Deactivate call barring (see page 42).
No ringing for an incoming call	Phone is set to not ring for incoming calls.	Change or edit the profile (see page 131)
		Edit the tone settings (see page 131).





Problem	Possible cause	Possible solution
Poor call quality	Network signal is weak.	Move clear of any obstructions that may block the signal.
	Network signal is changing frequently, e.g. when traveling on a train.	Wait until signal strength is consistently high before making or answering a call.
Other party in a call cannot hear you	Phone is muted.	Unmute the phone (see page 40).
Cannot send or receive text messages	Your service provider is not enabling this service.	Contact your service provider to check your subscription status.
	Service centre number is not correct.	Ensure that the service centre number is correct (see “Vertu Technical Support” on page 71). To obtain the number, contact your service provider.
Cannot send or receive MMS messages	Your service provider is not enabling this service.	Contact your service provider to check your subscription status.
	MMS settings are missing or incorrect.	Ensure that the MMS settings are correct (see “Multimedia message settings” on page 62). To obtain the settings, contact your service provider.
Cannot access the Internet	Your service provider is not enabling this service.	Contact your service provider to check your subscription status.
	Network settings are missing or incorrect.	Ensure that the network settings are correct. To obtain the settings, contact your service provider.
Storage memory is low	Too many items stored on the phone.	Delete any unwanted messages, clear the Internet history, and delete any unwanted files.

## Useful Commands

- To locate the IMEI number of your handset, from the home screen enter \*#06# and the IMEI number is displayed.
- To find out the version of the software on your phone enter \*#0000# and the version details are displayed.



## Specifications

Physical characteristics	
Dimensions (H × W × D)	116.3 x 60.8 x 12.85 mm
Volume	87 cc
Weight (including battery)	165–185 g, depending on version
Memory	C: Phone memory – 250 MB free user space E: Mass storage – 8 GB internal e-MMC F: Memory card - 32GB micro SD removable card
Connectivity	GSM 850/900/1800/1900 MHz EDGE WCDMA I (2100) II (1900) V (850) VI (800) HSDPA 10.2 Mbps HSUPA 2 Mbps WLAN 802.11 b/g, incl. WAPI for PRC
Speech codecs	WB-AMR, AMR, EFR, FR, HR
Bluetooth	Bluetooth v2.0 with Enhanced Data Rate
Power management	
Battery	BP-4LV 1500 mAh Li-ion
Interface	
Cable, data connection, and phone charging.	Micro-USB system connector (USB 2.0)
3.5-mm AV interface	AV cable with 3.5-mm plug and RGB connectors
Display	
LCD	Brilliant high-contrast TFT display
Resolution	VGA 640 x 480 pixels (16 million colors)
Audio/video codecs	
Audio codecs	MP3/WMA/WAV/RA/AAC/M4A
Video codecs	WMV/RV/MP4/3GP
Camera	5-megapixel, full focus, with Enhanced Depth of Field capability and flash.

GPS and navigation	
GPS	Integrated GPS, A-GPS receivers
Compass	Integral
Maps 3.0	SD card, depending on region
Radio	
Stereo FM radio	87.5–108 MHz/76–90 MHz, RDS



## Shortcuts

There are many shortcut keys available on your Vertu phone, which increase your efficiency.

### Dedicated keys

With the dedicated keys, you can access applications and tasks quickly. Each key has been assigned an application or a task. The dedicated keys respond differently to a short press or a long press, and that the **Menu** key is context sensitive.

Certain One-touch keys are user configurable.

To configure a key, select **Menu > Ctrl. Panel > Settings > General > Personalization > One-touch keys**.

By default the dedicated keys are set as follow:

Key	Short press	Long press
1	Menu key	Open applications
2	Calendar key	New meeting
3	Contacts key	New contact.
4	Email key	New email

### General shortcuts

Spacebar	Press and hold to turn the flashlight on or off. Caution! Do not look directly at the flashlight.
Concierge	Button on side provides access to Vertu Concierge assistance.
Home key	Displays the Home screen.
My key	Displays user configured menu bar below My Key, giving access to a maximum of four applications.
Power key	Press and hold to switch your device on and off. Press once to switch between profiles.
Sym key	Press and hold to activate or deactivate <b>Bluetooth</b> connectivity.

Ctrl key	Press and hold to activate or deactivate the <b>Silent</b> profile.
Ctrl + C	Copy text
Ctrl + V	Paste text
Ctrl + X	Cut text
Ctrl + A	Select all

### Home screen

Left selection key + right selection key	Lock and unlock the keypad and keyboard.
Call key	Open the call log.
0	Press and hold to open your home page in the Web browser.
1	Press and hold to call your voice mailbox.
Number key (2–9)	Call a phone number using speed dialing. You must first activate speed dialing in <b>Menu &gt; Ctrl. Panel</b> and <b>Settings &gt; Phone &gt; Call &gt; Speed dialing</b> .

### Web shortcuts

*	Zoom in the page (star key).
#	Zoom out the page (pound key).
0	Go to the Home page.
1	Show the toolbar.
2	Open the search dialog.
3	Return to the previous page.
4	Save the current page as a bookmark.
5	Open the map of keypad shortcuts.
6	Reload the current page.
7	View the page in full screen.
8	View the page overview.
9	Open the dialog for entering a new Web address.



## E-mail shortcuts

C	Create a new e-mail message.
D	Remove the selected e-mail messages.
R	Create a reply message to the sender of the e-mail message.
A	Create a reply message to the sender and all other recipients.
F	Forward the e-mail message.
N	Open the next e-mail message.
P	Open the previous e-mail message.
O	Open the selected e-mail message.
L	Change the follow-up status of the message.
J	Move up one page in the e-mail message.
K	Move down one page in the e-mail message.
T	Move to the first e-mail message in the mailbox or move to the beginning of an e-mail message.
B	Move to the last e-mail message in the mailbox or move to the end of an e-mail message.
M	Open the list of e-mail folders for moving messages.
U	Change the read or unread status of an e-mail message.
E	Accept a meeting request.
G	Tentatively accept a meeting request.
V	Decline a meeting request.
W	Sort e-mail messages.
I	Expand and collapse the messages.
Z	Start the synchronization.
S	Start the search.

## Calendar shortcuts

A	Open the agenda view.
D	Open the day view.
W	Open the week view.
M	Open the month view.
T	Open the to-do view.
N	Add a new meeting.



## Manufacturer's limited warranty



**NOTE:** This limited warranty does not affect your legal (statutory) rights under your applicable national laws related to the sale of consumer products.

Vertu provides this limited warranty to purchasers of the Vertu product(s) included in the sales package ("Product").

Vertu warrants to you that, during the warranty period, Vertu or a Vertu-authorized service company will, in a commercially reasonable time, remedy defects in materials, design, and workmanship free of charge. The Product will be repaired or, should Vertu, at its discretion, deem it necessary, replaced in accordance with this limited warranty (unless otherwise required by law).

## Warranty period

The warranty period starts at the time of the Product's original purchase by the first end user. The Product may consist of several different parts, and different parts may be covered by a different warranty period (hereinafter "warranty period"). The different warranty periods are:

- a. Twenty-four (24) months for the mobile device,
- b. Twelve (12) months for accessories (whether included in the mobile device sales package or sold separately).

To the extent that your national laws permit, the warranty period will not be extended or renewed or otherwise affected due to subsequent resale or Vertu-authorized repair or replacement of the Product. However, one or more parts repaired or replaced during the warranty period will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or for ninety (90) days from the date of repair or replacement, whichever is longer.

## How to get warranty service

If you want to make a claim under this limited warranty, please return your Product or the affected part (if it is not the entire Product) to a Vertu-authorized service company. You can call Vertu customer services (national or premium rates may apply) for further details on how to make a claim. Information about service companies authorized by Vertu can be found in the sales package or on local Vertu Web pages, where available.

Any claim under this limited warranty is subject to you notifying Vertu or a Vertu-authorized service company of the alleged defect within a reasonable time of it having come to your attention, and in any event, no later than the expiration of the warranty period.

When making a claim under this limited warranty, you will be required to provide:

- a. The Product (or the affected part) and
- b. The original proof of purchase, which clearly indicates the name and address of the seller, the date and place of purchase, the product type, and the IMEI or other serial number.

## What is not covered?

1. This limited warranty does not cover user manuals, third-party software, settings, content, data, or links, whether included or downloaded in the Product or whether included during installation, assembly, or shipping, or at any other time in the delivery chain or otherwise, or in any other way acquired by you. Vertu does not warrant that any Vertu software will meet your requirements, will work in combination with any hardware or software provided by a third party, that the operation of any software will be uninterrupted or error free, or that any defects in the software are correctable or will be corrected.
2. This limited warranty does not cover a) normal wear and tear (including, without limitation, wear and tear of camera lenses, batteries, or displays), b) defects caused by rough handling (including, without limitation, defects caused by sharp items, bending, compressing or dropping, etc.), or c) defects or damage caused by misuse of the Product, including use that is contrary to the instructions provided by Vertu (e.g., as set forth in the Product's Reference Manual), and/or e) other acts beyond the reasonable control of Vertu.
3. This limited warranty does not cover defects or alleged defects caused by the fact that the Product was used with, or connected to, any product, accessory, software, and/or service not manufactured or supplied by Vertu, or was used otherwise than for its intended use. Defects can be caused by viruses from your or a third party's unauthorized access to services, other accounts, computer systems, or networks. This unauthorized access can take place through hacking, password mining, or a variety of other means.
4. This limited warranty does not cover defects caused by the battery being short-circuited, the seals of the battery enclosure or cells being broken or tampered with, or the battery being used in equipment other than that for which it has been specified.
5. This limited warranty is not enforceable if the Product has been opened, modified, or repaired by any entity other than an authorized service center, if it has been repaired using unauthorized spare parts, or if the Product's serial number, mobile accessory date code, or IMEI number has been removed, erased, defaced, altered or is illegible in any way. This shall be determined at the sole discretion of Vertu.



## Warranty and legal information

6. This limited warranty is not enforceable if the Product has been exposed to moisture, dampness, extreme thermal or environmental conditions, or rapid changes in such conditions, corrosion, oxidation, spillage of food or liquid, or chemical products.

### Other important notices

A third-party, independent service provider provides the SIM card and cellular and/or other network or system on which the Product operates. Therefore, Vertu does not accept responsibility under this warranty for the operation, availability, coverage, services, or range of the cellular or other network or system. Before Vertu or a Vertu authorized service company can repair or replace the Product, the service provider may need to remove any SIM lock or other lock that may have been added to restrict the Product to a specific network or operator. In such situations, please contact your service provider to unlock the Product.

Please remember to make backup copies or keep written records of all important content and data stored in your Product, because content and data may be lost during repair or replacement of the Product. Vertu, in a manner consistent with the provisions of the section **Limitation of Vertu's liability**, shall not under any circumstances be liable, either expressly or implied, for any damages or losses of any kind whatsoever resulting from loss of, damage to, or corruption of, content or data during repair or replacement of the Product.

All parts of the Product or other equipment that Vertu has replaced shall become the property of Vertu. If the Product is found not to be covered by the terms and conditions of this limited warranty, Vertu and its authorized service companies reserve the right to charge a handling fee. When repairing or replacing the Product, Vertu may use products or parts that are new, equivalent to new, or reconditioned.

Your Product may contain country-specific elements, including software. If the Product has been reexported from its original destination country to another country, the Product may contain country-specific elements that are not considered defective under this limited warranty.

### Limitation of Vertu's liability

This limited warranty is your sole and exclusive remedy against Vertu, and Vertu's sole and exclusive liability with respect to defects in your Product. This limited warranty replaces all other Vertu warranties and liabilities, whether oral, written, (nonmandatory) statutory, contractual, in tort, or otherwise, including, without limitation, and where permitted by applicable law, any implied conditions, warranties, or other terms as to satisfactory quality or fitness for purpose. However, this limited warranty shall not exclude or limit i) any of your legal (statutory) rights under the applicable national laws or ii) any of your rights against the seller of the Product.

To the extent permitted by applicable law(s), Vertu does not assume any liability for loss of or damage to or corruption of data, for any loss of profit, loss of use of Products or functionality, loss of business, loss of contracts, loss of revenues, loss of anticipated savings, increased costs or expenses, or for any indirect loss or damage, consequential loss or damage, or special loss or damage.

To the extent permitted by applicable law, Vertu's liability shall be limited to the purchase value of the Product. The above limitations shall not apply in the case of gross negligence or intentional misconduct by Vertu, or in the case of death or personal injury resulting from Vertu's proven negligence.



**NOTE:** Your Product is a sophisticated electronic device. Vertu strongly encourages you to familiarize yourself with the Reference Manual and instructions provided with and for the Product.



**NOTE:** The Product may contain high-precision displays, camera lenses, and other such parts, which could be scratched or otherwise damaged if not handled very carefully.

Vertu  
Keilalahdentie 2-4  
FIN-02150 Espoo  
Finland

# Warranty and legal information

## SAR Notice – RM-582V

YOUR VERTU PHONE (MODEL: CONSTELLATION QUEST, TYPE: RM-582V, FCC ID: P7QRM-582V) MEETS GUIDELINES FOR EXPOSURE TO RADIO WAVES.

Your Vertu phone is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure guidelines for mobile devices employ a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit stated in the ICNIRP guidelines is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/kg), averaged over ten grams of tissue. Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions, with the device transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. The actual SAR level of an operating device can be below the maximum value because the device is designed to use only the power required to reach the network. That amount changes depending on a number of factors, such as how close you are to a network base station. The highest SAR value under the ICNIRP guidelines for use of the device at the ear is 0.63 W/kg.

This phone meets RF exposure guidelines when used either in the normal use position against the ear or when positioned at least 15 mm (5/8 inch) away from the body. When a carrying case, belt clip, or holder is used for body-worn operation, it should not contain metal and should position the phone at the above-stated distance away from your body.

To transmit data files or messages, this device requires a good quality connection to the network. In some cases, transmission of data files or messages may be delayed until such a connection is available. Make sure that the above separation distance instructions are followed until the transmission is completed.

Use of device accessories and enhancements may result in different SAR values. SAR values may vary depending on national reporting and testing requirements and the network band. Additional SAR information may be provided in the product information at [www.vertu.com](http://www.vertu.com).

**USA and Canada:** Your mobile device is also designed to meet the requirements for exposure to radio waves established by the Federal Communications Commission (USA) and Industry Canada. These requirements set a SAR limit of 1.6 W/kg, averaged over one gram of tissue. The highest SAR value reported under this standard during product certification for use at the ear is 0.85 W/kg, and when properly worn on the body is 0.70 W/kg.

## FCC/Industry Canada notice

Your Vertu phone may cause TV or radio interference (for example, when using a phone in close proximity to receiving equipment). The FCC or Industry Canada can require you to stop using your phone if such interference cannot be eliminated. If you require assistance, contact Vertu Concierge.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



**NOTE:** Vertu is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void your authority to operate the equipment.



Constellation Quest  
RM-582V

The headset kit complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) The components may not cause harmful interference, and (2) the components must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canada ICES-003.



**NOTE:** In France, you are only allowed to use WLAN indoors. There may be restrictions for WLAN use in some countries. Check with your local authorities for more information.





## Warranty and legal information

### Declaration of conformity

We, Vertu, declare under our sole responsibility that the product, Model Constellation Quest, type **RM-582V**, is in conformity with the provision of the following Council Directive: 1999/5/EC.

We, Vertu, declare under our sole responsibility that the product, Model Vertu V Collection Wired Headset, type WH-1V (Stereo), is in conformity with the provision of the following Council Directive: 1999/5/EC.

A copy of the Declaration of Conformity for both the above can be found at [www.vertu.com](http://www.vertu.com).



### Export controls

Your Vertu phone and headset kit may contain commodities, technology, or software exported from the United States in accordance with the Export Administration regulations. Diversion contrary to U.S. law is prohibited.

### Notices

Copyright © Vertu 2010. All rights reserved.

Reproduction, transfer, distribution, or storage of part or all of the contents in this document in any form without the prior written permission of Vertu is prohibited. Vertu operates a policy of continuous development. Vertu reserves the right to make changes and improvements to any of the products described in this document without prior notice.

Under no circumstances shall Vertu be responsible for any loss of data or income or any special, incidental, consequential, or indirect damages howsoever caused.

The contents of this document are provided as is. Except as required by applicable law, no warranties of any kind, either expressed or implied, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose, are made with respect to the accuracy, reliability, or contents of this document. Vertu reserves the right to revise this document or withdraw it at any time without prior notice. The availability of particular products may vary by region. Please check with Vertu Concierge.

Vertu and the V logo are trademarks or registered trademarks. Other product and company names mentioned herein may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

### Licenses

Includes RSA BSAFE cryptographic or security protocol software from RSA Security.



Java™ and all Java-based marks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc.



The third-party applications provided with your device may have been created by, and may be owned by, persons or entities not affiliated with, or related to, Vertu. Vertu does not own the copyrights or intellectual property rights to the third-party applications. As such, Vertu does not assume any responsibility for end-user support, functionality of the applications, or the information in the applications or these materials. Vertu does not provide any warranty for the third-party applications.

BY USING THE APPLICATIONS, YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT THE APPLICATIONS ARE PROVIDED AS IS, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. YOU FURTHER ACKNOWLEDGE THAT NEITHER VERTU NOR ITS AFFILIATES MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF TITLE, MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS, FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NEITHER VERTU NOR ITS AFFILIATES MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, THAT THE APPLICATIONS WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY THIRD-PARTY PATENTS, COPYRIGHTS, TRADEMARKS, OR OTHER RIGHTS.

## Warranty and legal information



### EU recycling notice

Vertu will comply with European Community requirements for the recycling of Waste Electrical & Electronic Equipment (WEEE).

This compliance is indicated by the addition of the following symbol to Vertu's products where appropriate.

The symbol indicates that the product was put onto the market after the WEEE legislation was implemented and that the consumer should not dispose of the item in normal household waste. Rather, it should be appropriately recycled.

If you want Vertu to recycle your product at the end of its life, either return it to the product point of purchase (if known) or return it to Vertu's headquarters.

Alternatively, should you purchase a replacement product from another supplier, the new supplier is obligated to take back the product that is being replaced and recycle it appropriately.

Background information on the European WEEE directive is available at [http://ec.europa.eu/environment/waste/weee/index\\_en.htm](http://ec.europa.eu/environment/waste/weee/index_en.htm).



### Passive Near Field Communication Device

Your Vertu handset contains a Passive Near Field Communication device.

This device enables Vertu to verify the authenticity of the phone if it is presented at a Vertu-branded store or Vertu-authorized service company.



### 3G

3rd generation mobile communications. A digital system for mobile communications that aims at global use and provides increased bandwidth. 3G lets mobile device users access a wide variety of services, including multimedia.

### Ad hoc operating mode

A WLAN network mode allowing two or more devices to connect to each other using WLAN directly, without a WLAN access point.

### Cookies

Cookies are little pieces of information a server sends to you for storage of information about your visits to a website. When you accept cookies, the server is able to evaluate your use of the website, what you are interested in, what you want to read, and so on.

### DNS

Domain Name System. An Internet service that translates domain names, such as www.nokia.com, into IP addresses, such as 192.100.124.195. Domain names are easier to remember, but this translation is needed because the Internet is based on IP addresses.

### DTMF tones

Dual-tone multifrequency tones. The DTMF system is used by Touch-Tone telephones. DTMF assigns a specific frequency, or tone, to each key so that it can easily be identified by a microprocessor. DTMF tones allow you to communicate with voice mailboxes, computerized telephony systems, and so on.

### EAP

Extensible authentication protocol. EAP plug-ins are used in wireless networks to authenticate wireless devices and authentication servers.

### EGPRS

Enhanced GPRS. EGPRS is similar to GPRS, but it enables faster connection. For availability and data transfer speed, contact your service provider.

### GPRS

General packet radio service. GPRS enables wireless access for cell phones to data networks (network service). GPRS uses packet data technology that sends information in short bursts of data over the mobile network. The benefit of sending data in packets is that the network is occupied only when sending or receiving data. Since GPRS uses the network efficiently, it allows for quick data connection setup and fast data transmission speeds.

You must subscribe to the GPRS service. For availability and subscription to GPRS, contact your service provider. During a voice call, you cannot establish a GPRS connection, and any existing GPRS connection is put on hold unless the network supports dual transfer mode.

### GPS

Global positioning system. GPS is a worldwide radio navigation system.

### HSDPA

High-speed downlink packet access. HSDPA brings high-speed data delivery to 3G terminals, ensuring that users requiring effective multimedia capabilities benefit from data rates previously unavailable because of limitations in the radio access network.

### HTTP

Hypertext transfer protocol. A document transfer protocol used on the Web.

### HTTPS

HTTP over a secure connection.

### IMAP4

Internet mail access protocol, version 4. A protocol used for accessing your remote mailbox.

### Internet access point

An access point is where your device connects to a network. To use email and multimedia services or to connect to the Internet and browse Web pages, you must first define Internet access points for the services.

### Infrastructure operating mode

A WLAN network mode where devices are connected to WLAN using a WLAN access point.

# Glossary



## **PIN**

Personal identification number. The PIN code protects your device from unauthorized use. The PIN code is supplied with the SIM card. If the PIN code request is selected, the code is required each time the device is switched on. The PIN code must be 4 to 8 digits long.

## **PIN2**

The PIN2 code is supplied with some SIM cards. The PIN2 code is required to access certain functions supported by the SIM card. The length of the PIN2 code is 4 to 8 digits.

## **POP3**

Post office protocol, version 3. A common mail protocol that can be used for accessing your remote mailbox.

## **PUK and PUK2**

Personal Unblocking Key. PUK and PUK2 codes are required to change a blocked PIN code or PIN2 code, respectively. The length of the code is 8 digits.

## **SIP**

Session Initiation Protocol. SIP is used for creating, modifying, and terminating certain types of communication sessions with one or more participants.

## **SSID**

Service set identifier: SSID is the name that identifies the specific WLAN.

Streaming: Streaming audio and video files means playing them directly from the web without downloading them first to your device.

## **UMTS**

Universal Mobile Telecommunications System. UMTS is a 3G mobile communication system. Besides voice and data, UMTS enables audio and video delivery to wireless devices. When you use your device on GSM and UMTS networks, multiple data connections can be active at the same time, and access points can share a data connection. In the UMTS network, data connections remain active during voice calls. You can, for example, browse the Web faster than previously possible while simultaneously speaking on the phone.

## **UPIN**

PIN code used on UMTS networks.

## **UPUK**

UPIN Unblocking Key. UPUK code is required to change a blocked UPIN code or PIN2 code. The length of the code is 8 digits.

## **USIM**

SIM card used on UMTS networks.

## **USSD command**

A service request, such as a request to activate an application or configure various settings remotely, that you can send to your operator or service provider with your device.

## **VoIP**

Voice over IP technology. VoIP is a set of protocols that facilitates phone calls over an IP network, such as the Internet.

## **VPN**

Virtual private network. VPN creates a secure connection to compatible corporate intranet and services, such as email.

## **WAP**

Wireless application protocol. WAP is an international standard for wireless communication.

## **WEP**

Wired equivalent privacy. WEP is an encryption method that encrypts data before it is transmitted over WLAN.

## **WLAN**

Wireless local area network.

## **WPA**

Wi-Fi Protected Access. Security method for WLAN.

## **WPA2**

Wi-Fi Protected Access 2. Security method for WLAN.



## Numerics

3G 151

## A

Access codes 10

Access points 84

Accessories 134

Common accessory settings 136

Activate sharing 107

Active Notes 96

Active sharing

Copy media files 108

Show media files stored in another device 107

Show media files stored in your device 107

View and share media files 107

A-GPS 118, 125

Alarm clock 25

Alarm ringtones 26

Alarm snooze time 77

Albums 103

Anniversary reminder 75

Answering calls 39

Application Manager 129

Application manager

Application manager settings 130

Install applications 129

Install software or an application 129

Remove applications and software 130

Audible indicators 21

Authority certificates 34

Automatic answer 39

Automatic redial 38

Automatic Time settings 26

AV cable 135

## B

Battery 134

Charging the battery 134

Prolong battery life 137

Vertu battery authentication 134

Battery indicator icons 20

Battery safety 7

Bluetooth

Block devices 89

Bluetooth connectivity 87

Bluetooth settings 88

Receive data 89

Security tips 88

Send data using 88

Bookmark manager 91

Bookmarks 93

Business cards 50

Business or Personal modes 132

Business preferences 31

## C

Calculator 96

Calendar 73

Alarm tones 77

Anniversary entry 75

Calendar alarm 77

Calendar entries 73

Calendar settings 77

Calendar views 73

Default mailbox 78

Deleting a Calendar item 76

Edit a Calendar item 75

First day of the week 77

Meeting entry 74

Meeting request 74

Receiving Calendar items 76

Sending Calendar items 76

To do entry 75

Calendar shortcuts 145

Call

Adjusting volume 40

Answering a call 39

Anykey answer 39

Automatic answer 39

Automatic redialing 38

Call barring 42



- Call forwarding 43
- Call Log 46
- Call on handsfree 40
- Call on hold 40
- Call waiting 39, 43
- Calling the last dialed number 38
- Conference call 41
- Duration 44
- In-call options 40
- Last number 38
- Making a call 37
- Making a call from contacts 37
- Making a call from the call logs 37
- Making a call using voice dialing 38
- Making an emergency call 37
- Multiparty calls 41
- Muting a call 40
- Private conversation 41
- Record 40
- Sending an image or a video clip 40
- Settings 42
- Swapping between calls 41
- Voice mail 41
- Call barring 34, 42
- Call duration 46
- Call log
  - Calling from call logs 37
  - Viewing recent call information 46
- Call waiting 39
- Calls
  - Silence calls or alarms 21
- Camera 79, 80
  - Camera setup 81
  - Capture an image 79
  - Captured images and videos 82
  - Flash setting 81
  - Image settings 81
  - Panorama mode 80
  - Scene modes 80
  - Self timer 81

- Sequence mode 81
- Shortcuts 83
- Toolbar 79
- Video settings 82
- Capture a video clip 80
- Cell broadcast 61
  - Settings 63
- Certificate manager 34
  - Certificate trust settings 35
- City Brief 72
- Clock 25
- Closed user group 34
- Commands 21
- Compass 117, 127
- Concierge 71
- Conference calls 41
- Connection security 94
- Contact Vertu 71
- Contacts 50
  - Adding an image to a contact 51
  - Adding contacts to a group 53
  - Adding information to a contact 52
  - Backups 54
  - Call from contacts 50
  - Contacts memory 54
  - Create new group 52
  - Creating a new contact 50
  - Delete multiple contacts 52
  - Deleting a contact 52
  - Deleting a group 53
  - Duplicate contacts 53
  - Editing group details 53
  - Groups 52
  - Managing contacts 53
  - Receiving a business card 51
  - Removing contacts from a group 53
  - Saving multiple phone numbers for a contact 51
  - Search for contacts in a remote database 55
  - Searching for a contact 50
  - Selecting the memory to use 54



- Sending a business card 50
- Settings 55
- SIM card memory 54
- Control panel 30
- Converter 97
- Creating a contact 50
- Current location 116

## D

- Data cable 135
  - Connecting the data cable to your Vertu phone 135
- Data connections 84
  - Active data connections 86
- Data connectivity icons 20
- Dedicated keys 19, 144
- Default mailbox 67, 132
- Delete cookies 94
- Desk stand 133
- Dictionary 98
- Digital rights management 35
- Downloads 72
- Drive 120
- DRM 35
- DTMF 40
- DTMF tones 40
- Dual mode 137
- Dual time 26

## E

- Email
  - Accounts 64
  - Attachments 66
  - Creating and sending an email 66
  - Delete 66
  - Email account preferences 67
  - Email settings 68
  - Email wizard 64
  - Generic Mailbox Settings 69
  - Reading an email message 65
  - Replying and forwarding an email 66
  - Search 66

- Sending a message 59
- Setting up your email accounts 22
- Switch between email folders 67
- Synchronizing email messages 67
- Email key 67
- Email message
  - Read 59
- Email notifications 132
- Emergency calls 37

## F

- File manager 97
  - Find and organize files 97
  - Free memory 137
  - Manage the phone memory 97
- Find places 118
- Fixed dialing 34
- Flashlight 21
- FM Radio
  - FM radio settings 110

## G

- Gallery 100
- Generic mailbox settings 68
- Global settings 68
- Glossary 151
- GPS 118, 125
- GSM 84

## H

- Handsfree call 40
- Home key 18
- Home media 106
- Home Network 106
  - Configure settings 107
  - Settings for home network 106
- Home screen 24
  - Notification zone 27
  - Setting up 24
  - Setting up applications 24
- Home synchronization 108





# Index

- Incoming files 108
- Outgoing files 108
- Settings 108
- Synchronize media files 108

## I

- Icons 20
- Images 101
  - Edit images 104
  - Organize images 102
  - Print images 104
  - View images 101
- IMEI number 11
- Indicator 18
- Information area 24
- Install applications 129
- Installing languages 99
- Internet 91
  - Browsing the web 91
- Internet access point 91, 151
- Internet Radio
  - Internet radio settings 111
  - Internet radio stations 110
- Intranet 99
  - Intranet Settings 99
- iSync 90

## J

- Java 129

## K

- Keypad autolock 17
- Keypad autolock period 33
- Keys
  - Dedicated keys 19
  - Qwerty keyboard 19
  - Select keys 19
  - Volume keys 19
  - Writing text with the keyboard 19

## L

- Landmarks 126
- Layout
  - Phone layout 12
- Licenses 45, 149
- Listen to messages 60
- Lock
  - Keypad autolock period 33
  - Lock code 33
  - Remote phone locking 33
  - Security code 10
- Lotus Notes
  - Lotus Notes Traveler 65
  - Setting up Lotus Notes Traveler 68

## M

- Mail for Exchange 65
- Manage memory 97
- Maps 116
  - Download and update maps 117
  - Drive and Walk 120
  - Favorites 119
  - Find places 118
  - Map Settings 123
  - Map view 117
  - Maps shortcuts 123
  - My position 116
  - Navigation view 121
  - Plan a route 122
  - Synchronize your Favorites 119
  - traffic and safety information 121
  - Update 117
  - Using the compass 117
  - View your saved places and routes 119
- Media
  - Accessing Media Feeds 93
- Media feeds 27, 93
  - Deleting 29
  - Downloading 28
  - Organizing 28



- Reading 27
  - Subscribe to a feed 28
- Meeting request 66, 74
- Memory 97, 101
  - Contacts 54
- Menu 29
- Menu key 29
- Message
  - Calling the sender of a message 58
  - Creating a presentation message 60
  - Editing a message and copying text 58
  - Message alerts 56
  - Messaging settings 61
  - Organize messages 57
  - Reading an email message 59
  - Service messages 60
  - Speech messages and Message reader 60
  - Text messages 57
  - Text messages on the SIM card 61
- Messaging folders 57
- Modes
  - Business or Personal 132
- Multimedia messages 58
  - Creating a multimedia message 58
  - Receive and reply to multimedia messages 59
- Multiparty calls 41
- Multiple calls 39
- Music
  - Playlists 111
- Music Player 111
  - Preset frequency settings 111
- Music Store settings 112
- Mute a call 40
- My Key 18
- My position 116

**N**

- Navigate pages 92
- Navigation view 121
- Net Settings 90
- Network 44

- Network destinations 91
- Network settings 84
- Notes 99
- Notification zone 27

## O

- Office Tools 96
- Office tools 96
- Ovi music 112
- Ovi Suite
  - Install Ovi Suite 90

## P

- Packet data 46, 137
- Panorama mode 80
- PC connections 89
- PDF Reader 98
- Personal Information Settings 70
- Personal preferences 31
- Personalize the home screen 132
- Phone
  - Automatic keyguard 17
  - Inserting the battery 16
  - Inserting the memory card 15
  - Inserting the SIM card 15
  - Locking and unlocking the keypad 17
  - Phone autolock period 33
  - Removing the back cover 14
  - Replacing the back cover 16
  - Setting up your phone 14, 22
  - Switching on your Vertu phone 17
  - Transfer content 23
    - Shortcuts 23
    - Transfer conflicts 23
    - Transfer content for the first time 23
- Phone autolock period 33
- Phone certificates 34
- PIM 70
- PIN code 32
  - Change the PIN code 32



# Index

Pin code 32  
Pin code request 32  
PIN2 code 33  
Playlists 111  
Positioning (GPS) 125  
    Assisted GPS (A-GPS) 125  
    GPS data 127  
    Landmarks 126  
    Positioning settings 127  
    Retrieve position information 127  
    Route guidance 127  
    Tips on creating a GPS connection 126  
    Trip meter 127  
Positioning methods 118  
Preferred wireless access point for Internet 91  
Presentations 60, 100  
Primary and secondary email accounts 67  
Printer 105  
Printing  
    Image print 139  
    Print files 139  
    Printer settings 139  
    Printing options 139  
Profiles 131  
    Audio themes 133  
    Change the display theme 132  
    Customize profiles 131  
    Ringtones 131

**Q**

Quickoffice 97

**R**

Radio 109  
    Favorite stations 110  
    FM Radio 109  
    Internet Radio 110  
    Station directory 109  
RealPlayer 114  
Record conversation 40  
Recorder 112

Red-eye reduction 104  
Register your Vertu phone 72  
Registering your Vertu phone 22  
Registration 72  
Rejecting or ending a call 39  
Remote Assist 71  
Remote phone locking 33  
Remote SIM mode 89  
Remove an alarm 26  
Remove software 130  
Ring tone  
    Adding a ring tone to a group 53  
Ringtone 51  
Ringtones 131  
Routes 119, 127

**S**

Satellite status 126  
Screen icons 20  
SD card 135  
    Copying data from the SD card 135  
Searching for a contact 50  
Security modules 36  
Security settings 32  
Self-timer 81  
Sequence mode 81  
Service messages 60  
Service numbers 54  
Setting date and time 25  
Settings  
    Accessories 136  
    Application manager 130  
    Automatic time 26  
    Bluetooth 88  
    Browser toolbar 92  
    Business and Personal 31  
    Calendar 77  
    Call 42  
    Cell broadcast 63  
    Clock 26  
    Contacts 55



- Email 68
- Images 81
- Intranet 99
- Maps 123
- Message reader 63
- Multimedia messages 62
- Other 63
- Positioning 127
- Print 105
- Printing 139
- Service messages 63
- Speech 63
- Synchronization 108
- Text messages 61
- Video image 82
- Share online 112
- Shortcuts 144
  - Calendar 77
  - Camera 83
  - Email shortcuts 145
  - Home screen 144
  - Maps 123
  - Web browser 91
  - Web shortcuts 144
- Slide show 103
- SMS 57
- Software updates 138
- Songs 101
- Sound clips 100
- Speakerphone 40
- Speech messages 60
- Speech settings 63
- Speed dialing 38
  - Activating speed dialing 38
  - Assign a number to the speed dial list 38
  - Deleting a speed dial 38
  - Making a call using speed dialing 38
- Status bar icons 20
- Streaming links 100
- Support

- Help and support 11
- In-device help 11
- Switching home screen views 31
- Symbian OS 129
- Sync 86
- Synchronization log 87
- Synchronize emails 67
- Synchronize, retrieve, or send content 23

## T

- Taking care of your phone 8
- Task viewer 30
- Technical support 71
- Text message
  - Open 57
  - Reply 58
- Text messages 57
- Themes 21, 132, 133
- Transfer music from a computer 112
- Troubleshooting 141

## U

- UMTS 84, 152
- USB data connection 90
- USB data connection options 135

## V

- Vertu Concierge 71
- Vertu Downloads 72
- Vertu package contents 12
- Vertu Remote Assist 71
- Vertu Select 72
- Vertu Technical Support 71
- Vertu Wired Headset 136
- Vertu's liability 147
- Video call 47
  - Options during a video call 47
  - Share live video or video clips 48
  - Video sharing 48
  - Video sharing requirements 48
  - Video sharing settings 48



# Index

Video center 115  
Video clips 101  
    Edit videos 104  
    Organize videos 102  
    View videos 101  
Voice  
    Setting up voice commands 21  
    Voice command 21  
Voice dialing 38  
Voice mail 41  
VoIP 152  
Volume in a call 40  
VPN 152

## W

Walk 120  
Wall charger 134  
Wall charger safety 7  
Warranty 146  
    Warranty service 146  
Web browser 91  
Web feeds 93  
Web settings 95  
Wireless LAN 85  
Wizard  
    Startup Wizard 22  
WLAN connections 85  
WLAN Internet access points 85  
WLAN settings 86  
WLAN wizard 85  
World clock 25, 26

## Z

Zip Manager 98